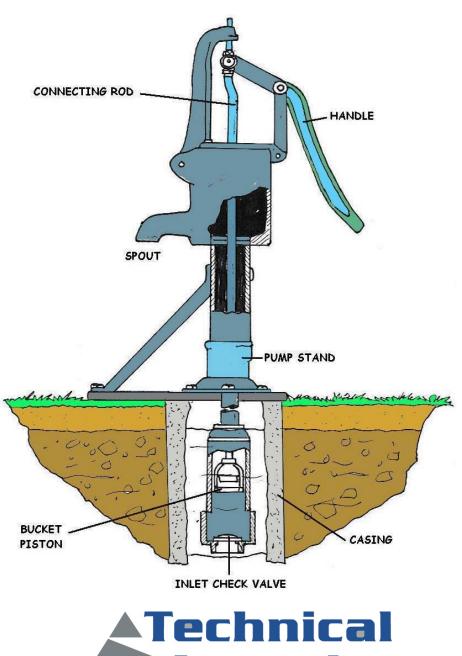
# **PUMP PRIMER 1**

# CONTINUING EDUCATION PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT COURSE





# **Printing and Saving Instructions**

The best thing to do is to download this pdf document to your computer desktop and open it with Adobe Acrobat reader.

Abode Acrobat reader is a free computer software program and you can find it at Abode Acrobat's website.

You can complete the course by viewing the course materials on your computer or you can print it out. We give you permission to print this document.

**Printing Instructions:** If you are going to print this document, this document is designed to be printed double-sided or duplexed but can be single-sided.

This course booklet does not have the assignment. Please visit our website and download the assignment also.

# Link to Assignment...

http://www.tlch2o.com/PDF/PumpPrimer1ASS.pdf

**State Approval Listing Link**, check to see if your State accepts or has pre-approved this course. Not all States are listed. Not all courses are listed. If the course is not accepted for CEU credit, we will give you the course free if you ask your State to accept it for credit.

**Professional Engineers**; Most states will accept our courses for credit but we do not officially list the States or Agencies.

# State Approval Listing URL...

http://www.tlch2o.com/PDF/CEU%20State%20Approvals.pdf

You can obtain a printed version from TLC for an additional \$49.95 plus shipping charges.

# **Important Information about this Manual**

This manual has been prepared to educate operators in the general education of pumping, pumps, motors, and hydraulic principles including basic water training and different pump applications. For most students, the study of pumping and hydraulics is quite large, requiring a major effort to bring it under control.

This manual should not be used as a guidance document for employees who are involved with cross-connection control. It is not designed to meet the requirements of the United States Environmental Protection Agency (**EPA**), the Department of Labor-Occupational Safety and Health Administration (**OSHA**), or your state environmental or health agency. Technical Learning College or Technical Learning Consultants, Inc. makes no warranty, guarantee or representation as to the absolute correctness or appropriateness of the information in this manual and assumes no responsibility in connection with the implementation of this information.

It cannot be assumed that this manual contains all measures and concepts required for specific conditions or circumstances. This document should be used for educational purposes and is not considered a legal document. Individuals who are responsible for hydraulic equipment, cross-connection control, backflow prevention or water distribution should obtain and comply with the most recent federal, state, and local regulations relevant to these sites and are urged to consult with OSHA, the EPA and other appropriate federal, state and local agencies.

#### **Copyright Notice**

©2005 Technical Learning College (TLC) No part of this work may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means without TLC's prior written approval. Permission has been sought for all images and text where we believe copyright exists and where the copyright holder is traceable and contactable. All material that is not credited or acknowledged is the copyright of Technical Learning College. This information is intended for educational purposes only. Most unaccredited photographs have been taken by TLC instructors or TLC students. We will be pleased to hear from any copyright holder and will make good on your work if any unintentional copyright infringements were made as soon as these issues are brought to the editor's attention.

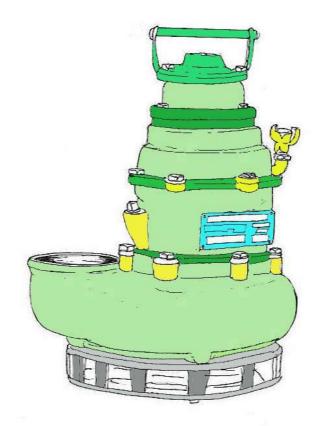
Every possible effort is made to ensure that all information provided in this course is accurate. All written, graphic, photographic or other material is provided for information only. Therefore, Technical Learning College accepts no responsibility or liability whatsoever for the application or misuse of any information included herein. Requests for permission to make copies should be made to the following address:

**TLC** 

PO Box 420

Payson, AZ 85547-0420

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. TLC is not liable for errors or omissions appearing in this document.



# PNUEMATIC SUBMERSIBLE PUMP

#### **Contributing Editors**

Joseph Camerata has a BS in Management with honors (magna cum laude). He retired as a Chemist in 2006 having worked in the field of chemical, environmental, and industrial hygiene sampling and analysis for 40 years. He has been a professional presenter at an EPA analytical conference at the Biosphere in Arizona and a presenter at an AWWA conference in Mesa, Arizona. He also taught safety classes at the Honeywell and City of Phoenix, and is a motivational/inspirational speaker nationally and internationally.

Dr. Eric Pearce S.M.E., chemistry and biological review.

Dr. Pete Greet S.M.E., retired biology instructor.

Jack White, Environmental, Health, Safety expert, City of Phoenix. Art Credits.

# Technical Learning College's Scope and Function

Technical Learning College (TLC) offers affordable continuing education for today's working professionals who need to maintain licenses or certifications. TLC holds approximately eighty different governmental approvals for granting of continuing education credit.

TLC's delivery method of continuing education can include traditional types of classroom lectures and distance-based courses or independent study. Most of TLC's distance based or independent study courses are offered in a print based format and you are welcome to examine this material on your computer with no obligation. Our courses are designed to be flexible and for you do finish the material on your leisure. Students can also receive course materials through the mail. The CEU course or e-manual will contain all your lessons, activities and assignments. Most CEU courses allow students to submit lessons using e-mail or fax, however some courses require students to submit lessons by postal mail. (See the course description for more information.) Students have direct contact with their instructor—primarily by e-mail. TLC's CEU courses may use such technologies as the World Wide Web, e-mail, CD-ROMs, videotapes and hard copies. (See the course description.) Make sure you have access to the necessary equipment before enrolling, i.e., printer, Microsoft Word and/or Adobe Acrobat Reader. Some courses may require proctored exams depending upon your state requirements.

## Flexible Learning

At TLC, there are no scheduled online sessions you need contend with, nor are you required to participate in learning teams or groups designed for the "typical" younger campus based student. You will work at your own pace, completing assignments in time frames that work best for you. TLC's method of flexible individualized instruction is designed to provide each student the guidance and support needed for successful course completion.

We will beat any other training competitor's price for the same CEU material or classroom training. Student satisfaction is guaranteed.

#### **Course Structure**

TLC's online courses combine the best of online delivery and traditional university textbooks. Online you will find the course syllabus, course content, assignments, and online open book exams. This student friendly course design allows you the most flexibility in choosing when and where you will study.

#### **Classroom of One**

TLC Online offers you the best of both worlds. You learn on your own terms, on your own time, but you are never on your own. Once enrolled, you will be assigned a personal Student Service Representative who works with you on an individualized basis throughout your program of study. Course specific faculty members are assigned at the beginning of each course providing the academic support you need to successfully complete each course.

#### **Satisfaction Guaranteed**

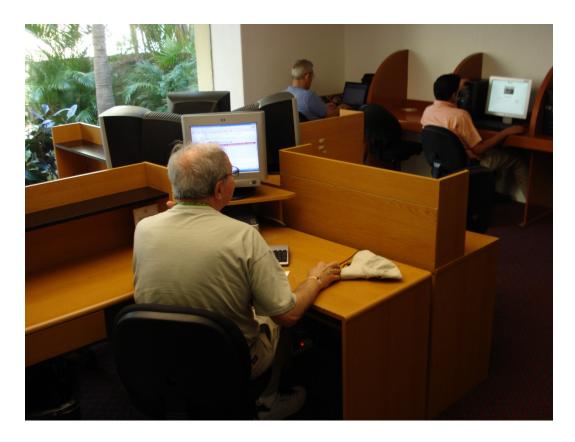
Our Iron-Clad, Risk-Free Guarantee ensures you will be another satisfied TLC student. We have many years of experience, dealing with thousands of students. We assure you, our customer satisfaction is second to none.

This is one reason we have taught more than 20,000 students.

Our administrative staff is trained to provide outstanding customer service. Part of that training is knowing how to solve most problems on the spot.

#### **TLC Continuing Education Course Material Development**

Technical Learning College's (TLC's) continuing education course material development was based upon several factors; extensive academic research, advice from subject matter experts, data analysis, task analysis and training needs assessment process information gathered from other states.



Most of our students will complete the Word version of the assignment and when finished, simply e-mail it to us. Make sure you include the registration page. Give us about two weeks to grade it and mail you a certificate of completion.

#### **Rush Service**

If you need the assignment graded within 48 hours, prepare to pay an additional rush service fee of \$50.00 for processing.

# **Course Description**

# **Pump Primer I Training Course**

This short CEU course will review various hydraulic principles and basic pumping foundations to properly understand the operation and function of primary water/wastewater related pumps and equipment. **You will not need any other materials for this course.** 

Water Distribution, Well Drillers, Pump Installers, Water Treatment Operators, Wastewater Treatment Operators, Wastewater Collection Operators, Industrial Wastewater Operators and General Backflow Assembly Testers. The target audience for this course is the person interested in working in a water or wastewater treatment or distribution/collection facility and/or wishing to maintain CEUs for certification license or to learn how to do the job safely and effectively, and/or to meet education needs for promotion.

#### **Final Examination for Credit**

Opportunity to pass the final comprehensive examination is limited to three attempts per course enrollment.

#### **Course Procedures for Registration and Support**

All of Technical Learning College's correspondence courses have complete registration and support services offered. Delivery of services will include, e-mail, web site, telephone, fax and mail support. TLC will attempt immediate and prompt service.

When a student registers for a distance or correspondence course, he/she is assigned a start date and an end date. It is the student's responsibility to note dates for assignments and keep up with the course work. If a student falls behind, he/she must contact TLC and request an end date extension in order to complete the course. It is the prerogative of TLC to decide whether to grant the request. All students will be tracked by their social security number or a unique number will be assigned to the student.

## **Instructions for Assignment**

The Pump Primer I - 0.8 CEU training course training course uses a multiple choice type answer key. You can find a copy of the answer key r in Word format on TLC's website under the Assignment Page. You can also find complete course support under the Assignment Page.

You can write your answers in this manual or type out your own answer key. TLC would prefer that you type out and fax or e-mail the final exam to TLC, but it is not required.

#### Feedback Mechanism (examination procedures)

Each student will receive a feedback form as part of their study packet. You will be able to find this form in the rear of the course or lesson.

#### Security and Integrity

All students are required to do their own work. All lesson sheets and final exams are not returned to the student to discourage sharing of answers. Any fraud or deceit and the student will forfeit all fees and the appropriate agency will be notified.

#### **Grading Criteria**

TLC will offer the student either pass/fail or a standard letter grading assignment. If TLC is not notified, you will only receive a pass/fail notice.

#### **Required Texts**

The Pump Primer I - 0.8 CEU training course will not require any other materials. This course comes complete. No other materials are needed.

#### **Recordkeeping and Reporting Practices**

TLC will keep all student records for a minimum of seven years. It is your responsibility to give the completion certificate to the appropriate agencies.

#### **ADA Compliance**

TLC will make reasonable accommodations for persons with documented disabilities. Students should notify TLC and their instructors of any special needs. Course content may vary from this outline to meet the needs of this particular group. Please check with your State for special instructions.

You will have 90 days from receipt of this manual to complete it in order to receive your Continuing Education Units (**CEUs**) or Professional Development Hours (**PDHs**). A score of 70% or better is necessary to pass this course. If you should need any assistance, please email all concerns and the final test to: info@tlch2o.com.

#### When the Student finishes this course...

#### At the conclusion of this course:

At the finish of this course, the student should be able to explain and describe the various hydraulic principles, pumping devices, and pumping methods, identify various hydraulic and horsepower principles that are commonly employed in moving fluids. Upon completion of this course, the student will obtain 8 hours of continuing education relating to pump, pumping and hydraulic principles.

#### **Educational Mission**

#### The educational mission of TLC is:

To provide TLC students with comprehensive and ongoing training in the theory and skills needed for the environmental education field,

To provide TLC students opportunities to apply and understand the theory and skills needed for operator certification and environmental education,

To provide opportunities for TLC students to learn and practice environmental educational skills with members of the community for the purpose of sharing diverse perspectives and experience,

To provide a forum in which students can exchange experiences and ideas related to environmental education.

To provide a forum for the collection and dissemination of current information related to environmental education, and to maintain an environment that nurtures academic and personal growth.

# **Table of Contents**

Common Hydraulic T Pump Definitions Archimedes Hydraulic Principles Geometric Principles Atmospheric Pressure Pressure and Force Hydraulic Developme Hydraulic Lever	e	10 11 13 17 22 23 25 27	
Forces on a Submerg	jed Sur	face	34
Hydrostatic Paradox		35	
Variations	38		
Pascal's Law	39		
Venturi	43		
Pump Introductions	45		
Completed Pumps	47		
Types of Pumps	50		-4
General Pumping Fur		itais	51
Pumping Categories	52	_	
Positive Displacemen	•	S	53
Pump Specifications Suction Lift	55 56		
	56 57		
Pump Efficiency		61	
Pumping Requiremer Pump Viscosity	63	01	
Darcy-Weisbach Forr		66	
Understanding the W			69
Types of Pumps	69	шр	03
Progressing Cavity P		79	
Screw Pump	83		
Reciprocating Pump	85		
Rope Pump	93		
Impulse Pump	97		
Hydraulic Ram Pump	98		
Wind Mills	103		
Pasture Pumps	104		
Reciprocating Pumps	113		
Vapor Pressure	120		
Sling Pump	123		
Submersible	124		
Valveless Pumps	125		
Glossary	129		
Appendixes	171		
References	193		

# **Common Hydraulic Terms**

#### Head

The height of a column or body of fluid above a given point expressed in linear units. Head is often used to indicate gauge pressure. Pressure is equal to the height times the density of the liquid.

#### Head, Friction

The head required to overcome the friction at the interior surface of a conductor and between fluid particles in motion. It varies with flow, size, type, and conditions of conductors and fittings, and the fluid characteristics.

### Head, static

The height of a column or body of fluid above a given point.

### **Hydraulics**

Engineering science pertaining to liquid pressure and flow.

# **Hydrokinetics**

Engineering science pertaining to the energy of liquid flow and pressure.

#### Pascal's Law

A pressure applied to a confined fluid at rest is transmitted with equal intensity throughout the fluid.

#### **Pressure**

The application of continuous force by one body upon another that it is touching; compression. Force per unit area, usually expressed in pounds per square inch (Pascal or bar).

#### Pressure. Absolute

The pressure above zone absolute, i.e. the sum of atmospheric and gauge pressure. In vacuum related work it is usually expressed in millimeters of mercury. (mmHg).

#### Pressure, Atmospheric

Pressure exported by the atmosphere at any specific location. (Sea level pressure is approximately 14.7 pounds per square inch absolute, 1 bar = 14.5psi.)

#### Pressure, Gauge

Pressure differential above or below ambient atmospheric pressure.

#### Pressure, Static

The pressure in a fluid at rest.

# Pump Definitions (Larger Glossary in the rear of this manual)

Fluid: Any substance that can be pumped such as oil, water, refrigerant, or even air.

**Gasket**: Flat material that is compressed between two flanges to form a seal.

Gland follower: A bushing used to compress the packing in the stuffing box and to control

leakoff.

Gland sealing line: A line that directs sealing fluid to the stuffing box.

**Horizontal pumps**: Pumps in which the center line of the shaft is horizontal.

**Impeller**: The part of the pump that increases the speed of the fluid being handled.

**Inboard**: The end of the pump closest to the motor.

**Inter-stage diaphragm**: A barrier that separates stages of a multi-stage pump.

**Key**: A rectangular piece of metal that prevents the impeller from rotating on the shaft.

**Keyway**: The area on the shaft that accepts the key.

**Kinetic energy**: Energy associated with motion.

**Lantern ring**: A metal ring located between rings of packing that distributes gland sealing fluid.

**Leak-off**: Fluid that leaks from the stuffing box.

**Mechanical seal**: A mechanical device that seals the pump stuffing box.

**Mixed flow pump**: A pump that uses both axial-flow and radial-flow components in one impeller.

**Multi-stage pumps**: Pumps with more than one impeller.

**Outboard**: The end of the pump farthest from the motor.

Packing: Soft, pliable material that seals the stuffing box.

**Positive displacement pumps**: Pumps that move fluids by physically displacing the fluid inside the pump.

**Radial bearings**: Bearings that prevent shaft movement in any direction outward from the center line of the pump.

**Radial flow**: Flow at 90° to the center line of the shaft.

Retaining nut: A nut that keeps the parts in place.

**Rotor**: The rotating parts, usually including the impeller, shaft, bearing housings, and all other parts included between the bearing housing and the impeller.

**Score**: To cause lines, grooves, or scratches.

**Shaft**: A cylindrical bar that transmits power from the driver to the pump impeller.

Shaft sleeve: A replaceable tubular covering on the shaft.

**Shroud**: The metal covering over the vanes of an impeller.

**Slop drain**: The drain from the area that collects leak-off from the stuffing box.

**Slurry**: A thick, viscous fluid, usually containing small particles.

**Stages**: Impellers in a multi-stage pump.

**Stethoscope**: A metal device that can amplify and pinpoint pump sounds.

**Strainer**: A device that retains solid pieces while letting liquids through.

**Stuffing box**: The area of the pump where the shaft penetrates the casing.

**Suction**: The place where fluid enters the pump.

**Suction eye**: The place where fluid enters the pump impeller.

**Throat bushing**: A bushing at the bottom of the stuffing box that prevents packing from being pushed out of the stuffing box into the suction eye of the impeller.

**Thrust**: Force, usually along the center line of the pump.

**Thrust bearings**: Bearings that prevent shaft movement back and forth in the same direction as the center line of the shaft.

**Troubleshooting**: Locating a problem.

Vanes: The parts of the impeller that push and increase the speed of the fluid in the pump.

**Vertical pumps**: Pumps in which the center line of the shaft runs vertically.

**Volute**: The part of the pump that changes the speed of the fluid into pressure.

**Wearing rings**: Replaceable rings on the impeller or the casing that wear as the pump operates.

# **Archimedes**



**ARCHIMEDES** 

### **Archimedes**

Born	About 287 BC in Syracuse, Sicily. At the time, Syracuse was an independent Greek city-state with a 500-year history.
Died	212 or 211 BC in Syracuse when it was being sacked by a Roman army. He was killed by a Roman soldier who did not know who he was.
Education	Probably studied in Alexandria, Egypt, under the followers of Euclid.
Family	His father was an astronomer named Phidias and he was probably related to Hieron II, the king of Syracuse. It is not known whether he was married nor had any children.
Inventions	Many war machines used in the defense of Syracuse, compound pulley systems, planetarium, water screw (possibly), water organ (possibly), burning mirrors (very unlikely).
Fields of Science Initiated	Hydrostatics, static mechanics, pycnometry (the measurement of the volume or density of an object). He is called the "father of integral calculus" and also the "father of mathematical physics".
Major Writings	On plane equilibriums, Quadrature of the parabola, On the sphere and cylinder, On spirals, On conoids and spheroids, On floating bodies, Measurement of a circle, The Sand reckoner, On the method of mechanical problems.
Place in History	Generally regarded as the greatest mathematician and scientist of antiquity and one of the three greatest mathematicians of all time (together with Isaac Newton (English 1643-1727) and Carl Friedrich Gauss (German 1777-1855)).

Archimedes was a great mathematician of ancient times. His greatest contributions were in geometry. He also spent some time in Egypt, where he invented the machine now called Archimedes' screw, which was a mechanical water pump. Among his most famous works is *Measurement of the Circle*, where he determined the exact value of pi between the two fractions, 3 10/71 and 3 1/7. He got this information by inscribing and circumscribing a circle with a 96-sided regular polygon.

Archimedes made many contributions to geometry in his work in the areas of plane figures and in the areas of area and volumes of curved surfaces. His methods started the idea for calculus which was "invented" 2,000 years later by Sir Isaac Newton and Gottfried Wilhelm von Leibniz. Archimedes proved that the volume of an inscribed sphere is two-thirds the volume of a circumscribed cylinder. He requested that this formula/diagram be inscribed on his tomb.

His works (that survived) include:

Measurement of a Circle

- On the Sphere and Cylinder
- On Spirals
- The Sand Reckoner

The Roman's highest numeral was a myriad (10,000). Archimedes was not content to use that as the biggest number, so he decided to conduct an experiment using large numbers. The question: How many grains of sand there are in the universe? He made up a system to measure the sand. While solving this problem, Archimedes discovered something called powers. The answer to Archimedes' question was one with 62 zeros after it  $(1 \times 10^{62})$ .

When numbers are multiplied by themselves, they are called powers.

Some powers of two are:

$$1 = 0 \text{ power} = 2^0$$

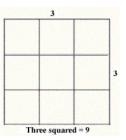
$$2 = 1^{st} power = 2^1$$

$$2 \times 2 = 2^{nd}$$
 power (squared)  $=2^2$ 

$$2 \times 2 \times 2 = 3^{rd}$$
 power (cubed)  $= 2^3$ 

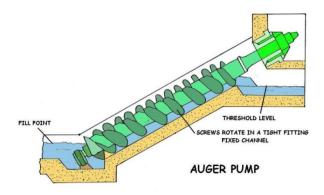
$$2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 4^{th} \text{ power}=2^4$$

There are short ways to write exponents. For example, a short way to write 81 is 3<sup>4</sup>. This is read as three to the fourth power.



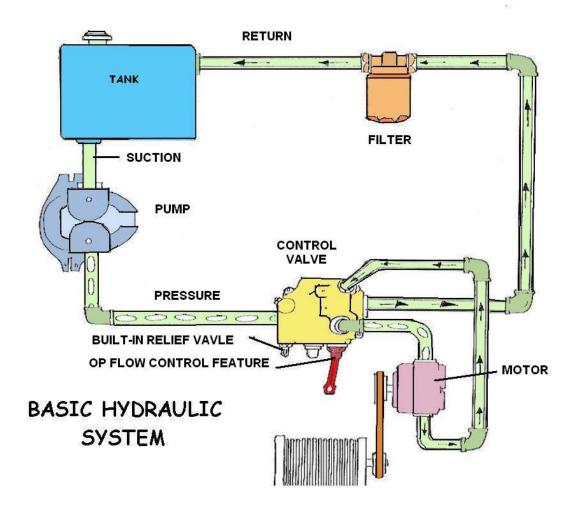
- On Plane Equilibriums
- On Floating Bodies

This problem was after Archimedes had solved the problem of King Hiero's gold crown. He experimented with liquids. He discovered *density* and *specific gravity*.



This pump is at least 2,000 years old.

The Archimedes Screw (also called an Archimedes Snail) was used for irrigation and powered by horses, people, mules, etc. This pump is even used today, although rarely! The helix revolves inside a tube (only the bottom of the tube is shown) and the water rises accordingly. Whether or not it was actually invented by Archimedes is certainly debatable, though his overall brilliance is not.



# **Hydraulic Principles Section**

**Definition:** Hydraulics is a branch of engineering concerned mainly with moving liquids. The term is applied commonly to the study of the mechanical properties of water, other liquids, and even gases when the effects of compressibility are small. Hydraulics can be divided into two areas, hydrostatics and hydrokinetics.

## Hydraulics: The Engineering science pertaining to liquid pressure and flow.

The word *hydraulics* is based on the Greek word for water, and originally covered the study of the physical behavior of water at rest and in motion. Use has broadened its meaning to include the behavior of all liquids, although it is primarily concerned with the motion of liquids.

Hydraulics includes the manner in which liquids act in tanks and pipes, deals with their properties, and explores ways to take advantage of these properties.

Hydrostatics, the consideration of liquids at rest, involves problems of buoyancy and flotation, pressure on dams and submerged devices, and hydraulic presses. The relative incompressibility of liquids is one of its basic principles. Hydrodynamics, the study of liquids in motion, is concerned with such matters as friction and turbulence generated in pipes by flowing liquids, the flow of water over weirs and through nozzles, and the use of hydraulic pressure in machinery.

#### **Hydrostatics**

Hydrostatics is about the pressures exerted by a fluid at rest. Any fluid is meant, not just water. Research and careful study on water yields many useful results of its own, however, such as forces on dams, buoyancy and hydraulic actuation, and is well worth studying for such practical reasons. Hydrostatics is an excellent example of deductive mathematical



physics, one that can be understood easily and completely from a very few fundamentals, and in which the predictions agree closely with experiment.

There are few better illustrations of the use of the integral calculus, as well as the principles of ordinary statics, available to the student. A great deal can be done with only elementary mathematics. Properly adapted, the material can be used from the earliest introduction of school science, giving an excellent example of a quantitative science with many possibilities for hands-on experiences.

The definition of a fluid deserves careful consideration. Although time is not a factor in hydrostatics, it enters in the approach to hydrostatic equilibrium. It is usually stated that a fluid is a substance that cannot resist a shearing stress, so that pressures are normal to confining surfaces. Geology has now shown us clearly that there are substances which can resist shearing forces over short time intervals, and appear to be typical solids, but which flow like liquids over long time intervals. Such materials include wax and pitch, ice, and even rock.

A ball of pitch, which can be shattered by a hammer, will spread out and flow in months. Ice, a typical solid, will flow in a period of years, as shown in glaciers, and rock will flow over hundreds of years, as in convection in the mantle of the earth.

Shear earthquake waves, with periods of seconds, propagate deep in the earth, though the rock there can flow like a liquid when considered over centuries. The rate of shearing may not be strictly proportional to the stress, but exists even with low stress.

Viscosity may be the physical property that varies over the largest numerical range, competing with electrical resistivity. There are several familiar topics in hydrostatics which often appears in expositions of introductory science, and which are also of historical interest and can enliven their presentation. Let's start our study with the principles of our atmosphere.

# **Atmospheric Pressure**

The atmosphere is the entire mass of air that surrounds the earth. While it extends upward for about 500 miles, the section of primary interest is the portion that rests on the earth's surface and extends upward for about 7 1/2 miles. This layer is called the troposphere.

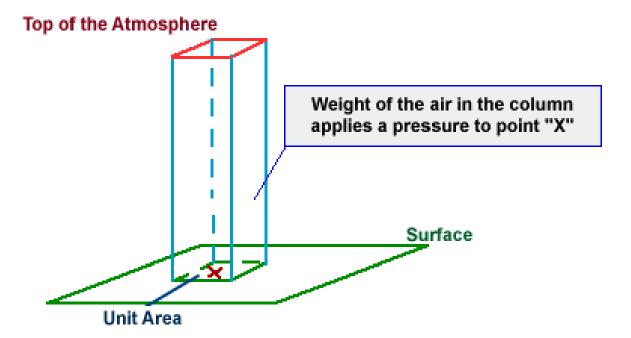
If a column of air 1-inch square extending all the way to the "*top*" of the atmosphere could be weighed, this column of air would weigh approximately 14.7 pounds at sea level. Thus, atmospheric pressure at sea level is approximately 14.7 psi.

As one ascends, the atmospheric pressure decreases by approximately 1.0 psi for every 2,343 feet. However, below sea level, in excavations and depressions, atmospheric pressure increases. Pressures under water differ from those under air only because the weight of the water must be added to the pressure of the air.

Atmospheric pressure can be measured by any of several methods. The common laboratory method uses the mercury column barometer. The height of the mercury column serves as an indicator of atmospheric pressure. At sea level and at a temperature of 0° Celsius (**C**), the height of the mercury column is approximately 30 inches, or 76 centimeters. This represents a pressure of approximately 14.7 psi. The 30-inch column is used as a reference standard.

Another device used to measure atmospheric pressure is the aneroid barometer. The aneroid barometer uses the change in shape of an evacuated metal cell to measure variations in atmospheric pressure. The thin metal of the aneroid cell moves in or out with the variation of pressure on its external surface. This movement is transmitted through a system of levers to a pointer, which indicates the pressure.

The atmospheric pressure does not vary uniformly with altitude. It changes very rapidly. Atmospheric pressure is defined as the force per unit area exerted against a surface by the weight of the air above that surface. In the diagram on the following page, the pressure at point "X" increases as the weight of the air above it increases. The same can be said about decreasing pressure, where the pressure at point "X" decreases if the weight of the air above it also decreases.



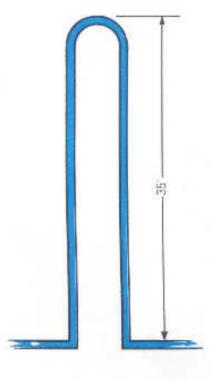
# **Barometric Loop**

The barometric loop consists of a continuous section of supply piping that abruptly rises to a height of approximately 35 feet and then returns back down to the originating level. It is a loop in the piping system that effectively protects against backsiphonage. It may not be used to protect against backpressure.

Its operation, in the protection against backsiphonage, is based upon the principle that a water column, at sea level pressure, will not rise above 33.9 feet. In general, barometric loops are locally fabricated, and are 35 feet high.

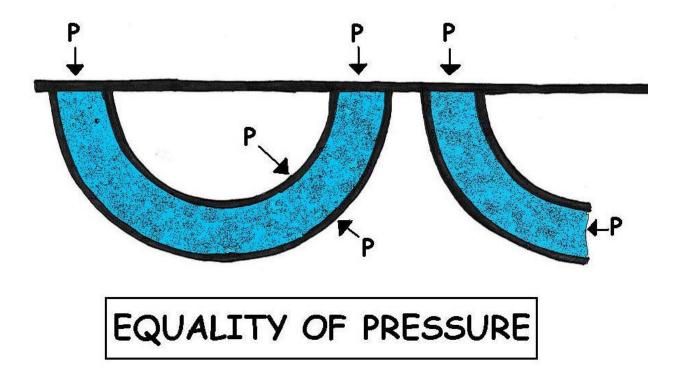
Pressure may be referred to using an absolute scale, pounds per square inch absolute (**psia**), or gauge scale, (**psiag**). Absolute pressure and gauge pressure are related. Absolute pressure is equal to gauge pressure plus the atmospheric pressure. At sea level, the atmospheric pressure is 14.7 psai.

Absolute pressure is the total pressure. Gauge pressure is simply the pressure read on the gauge. If there is no pressure on the gauge other than atmospheric, the gauge will read zero. Then the absolute pressure would be equal to 14.7 psi, which is the atmospheric pressure.



#### **Pressure**

By a fluid, we have a material in mind like water or air, two very common and important fluids. Water is incompressible, while air is very compressible, but both are fluids. Water has a definite volume; air does not. Water and air have low viscosity; that is, layers of them slide very easily on one another, and they quickly assume their permanent shapes when disturbed by rapid flows. Other fluids, such as molasses, may have high viscosity and take a long time to come to equilibrium, but they are no less fluids. The coefficient of viscosity is the ratio of the shearing force to the velocity gradient. Hydrostatics deals with permanent, time-independent states of fluids, so viscosity does not appear, except as discussed in the Introduction.



A fluid, therefore, is a substance that cannot exert any permanent forces tangential to a boundary. Any force that it exerts on a boundary must be normal to the boundary. Such a force is proportional to the area on which it is exerted, and is called a pressure. We can imagine any surface in a fluid as dividing the fluid into parts pressing on each other, as if it were a thin material membrane, and so think of the pressure at any point in the fluid, not just at the boundaries. In order for any small element of the fluid to be in equilibrium, the pressure must be the same in all directions (or the element would move in the direction of least pressure), and if no other forces are acting on the body of the fluid, the pressure must be the same at all neighboring points.

Therefore, in this case the pressure will be the same throughout the fluid, and the same in any direction at a point (Pascal's Principle). Pressure is expressed in units of force per unit area such as dyne/cm², N/cm² (pascal), pounds/in² (psi) or pounds/ft² (psf). The axiom that if a certain volume of fluid were somehow made solid, the equilibrium of forces would not be disturbed is useful in reasoning about forces in fluids.

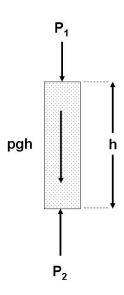
On earth, fluids are also subject to the force of gravity, which acts vertically downward, and has a magnitude  $\gamma = \rho g$  per unit volume, where g is the acceleration of gravity, approximately 981 cm/s² or 32.15 ft/s²,  $\rho$  is the density, the mass per unit volume, expressed in g/cm³, kg/m³, or slug/ft³, and  $\gamma$  is the specific weight, measured in lb/in³, or lb/ft³ (pcf). Gravitation is an example of a body force that disturbs the equality of pressure in a fluid. The presence of the gravitational body force causes the pressure to increase with depth, according to the equation dp =  $\rho g$  dh, in order to support the water above. We call this relation the barometric equation, for when this equation is integrated, we find the variation of pressure with height or depth. If the fluid is incompressible, the equation can be integrated at once, and the pressure as a function of depth h is  $\rho = \rho g h + \rho 0$ .

The density of water is about 1 g/cm<sup>3</sup>, or its specific weight is 62.4 pcf. We may ask what depth of water gives the normal sea-level atmospheric pressure of 14.7 psi, or 2117 psf.

This is simply 2117 / 62.4 = 33.9 ft of water. This is the maximum height to which water can be raised by a suction pump, or, more correctly, can be supported by atmospheric pressure. Professor James Thomson (brother of William Thomson, Lord Kelvin) illustrated the equality of pressure by a "curtain-ring" analogy shown in the diagram. A section of the toroid was identified, imagined to be solidified, and its equilibrium was analyzed.

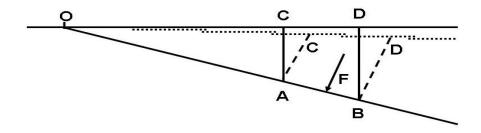
The forces exerted on the curved surfaces have no component along the normal to a plane section, so the pressures at any two points of a plane must be equal, since the fluid represented by the curtain ring was in equilibrium. The right-hand part of the diagram illustrates the equality of pressures in orthogonal directions. This can be extended to

Free Surface



Increase of Pressure with Depth

any direction whatever, so Pascal's Principle is established. This demonstration is similar to the usual one using a triangular prism and considering the forces on the end and lateral faces separately.



Thrust on a Plane

# Free Surface Perpendicular to Gravity

When gravity acts, the liquid assumes a free surface perpendicular to gravity, which can be proved by Thomson's method. A straight cylinder of unit cross-sectional area (assumed only for ease in the arithmetic) can be used to find the increase of pressure with depth. Indeed, we see that p2 = p1 + pgh. The upper surface of the cylinder can be placed at the free surface if desired. The pressure is now the same in any direction at a point, but is greater at points that lie deeper. From this same figure, it is easy to prove Archimedes' Principle that the buoyant force is equal to the weight of the displaced fluid, and passes through the center of mass of this displaced fluid.

# **Geometric Arguments**

Ingenious geometric arguments can be used to substitute for easier, but less transparent arguments using calculus. For example, the force acting on one side of an inclined plane surface whose projection is AB can be found as in the diagram on the previous page. O is the point at which the prolonged projection intersects the free surface. The line AC' perpendicular to the plane is made equal to the depth AC of point A, and line BD' is similarly drawn equal to BD. The line OD' also passes through C', by proportionality of triangles OAC' and OAD'. Therefore, the thrust F on the plane is the weight of a prism of fluid of crosssection AC'D'B, passing through its centroid normal to plane AB. Note that the thrust is equal to the density times the area times the depth of the center of the area; its line of action does not pass through the center, but below it, at the center of thrust. The same result can be obtained with calculus by summing the pressures and the moments.

# p = atm P/og Barometer

# **Atmospheric Pressure and its Effects**

Suppose a vertical pipe is stood in a pool of water, and a vacuum pump applied to the upper end. Before

we start the pump, the water levels outside and inside the pipe are equal, and the pressures on the surfaces are also equal and are equal to the atmospheric pressure.

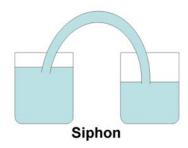
Now start the pump. When it has sucked all the air out above the water, the pressure on the surface of the water inside the pipe is zero, and the pressure at the level of the water on the outside of the pipe is still the atmospheric pressure. Of course, there is the vapor pressure of the water to worry about if you want to be precise, but we neglect this complication in making our point. We require a column of water 33.9 ft high inside the pipe, with a vacuum above it, to balance the atmospheric pressure. Now do the same thing with liquid mercury, whose density at 0 °C is 13.5951 times that of water. The height of the column is 2.494 ft, 29.92 in, or 760.0 mm.

# **Standard Atmospheric Pressure**

This definition of the standard atmospheric pressure was established by Regnault in the mid-19th century. In Britain, 30 in. Hg (inches of mercury) had been used previously. As a practical matter, it is convenient to measure pressure differences by measuring the height of liquid columns, a practice known as manometry. The barometer is a familiar example of this, and atmospheric pressures are traditionally given in terms of the length of a mercury column. To make a barometer, the barometric tube, closed at one end, is filled with mercury and then inverted and placed in a mercury reservoir. Corrections must be made for temperature, because the density of mercury depends on the temperature, and the brass scale expands for capillarity if the tube is less than about 1 cm in diameter, and even slightly for altitude, since the value of g changes with altitude.

The vapor pressure of mercury is only 0.001201 mmHg at  $20^{\circ}$ C, so a correction from this source is negligible. For the usual case of a mercury column ( $\alpha = 0.000181792$  per °C) and a brass scale (&alpha = 0.0000184 per °C) the temperature correction is -2.74 mm at 760 mm and  $20^{\circ}$ C. Before reading the barometer scale, the mercury reservoir is raised or lowered until the surface of the mercury just touches a reference point, which is mirrored in the surface so it is easy to determine the proper position.

An aneroid barometer uses a partially evacuated chamber of thin metal that expands and contracts according to the external pressure. This movement is communicated to a needle that revolves in a dial. The materials and construction are arranged to give a low temperature coefficient. The instrument must be calibrated before use, and is usually arranged to read directly in elevations. An aneroid barometer is much easier to use in field observations, such as in reconnaissance surveys. In a particular case, it would be read at the start of the day at the base camp, at



various points in the vicinity, and then finally at the starting point, to determine the change in pressure with time. The height differences can be calculated from  $h = 60,360 \log (P/p) [1 + (T + t - 64)/986)]$  feet, where P and p are in the same units, and T, t are in °F.

An absolute pressure is referring to a vacuum, while a gauge pressure is referring to the atmospheric pressure at the moment. A negative gauge pressure is a (partial) vacuum. When a vacuum is stated to be so many inches, this means the pressure below the atmospheric pressure of about 30 in. A vacuum of 25 inches is the same thing as an absolute pressure of 5 inches (of mercury).

#### **Vacuum**

The term *vacuum* indicates that the absolute pressure is less than the atmospheric pressure and that the gauge pressure is negative. A complete or total vacuum would mean a pressure of 0 psia or –14.7 psig. Since it is impossible to produce a total vacuum, the term vacuum, as used in this document, will mean all degrees of partial vacuum. In a partial vacuum, the pressure would range from slightly less than 14.7 psia (0 psig) to slightly greater than 0 psia (-14.7 psig). Backsiphonage results from atmospheric pressure exerted on a liquid, forcing it toward a supply system that is under a vacuum.

#### **Water Pressure**

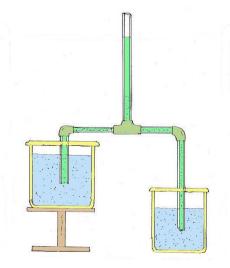
The weight of a cubic foot of water is 62.4 pounds per square foot. The base can be subdivided into 144-square inches with each subdivision being subjected to a pressure of 0.433 psig. Suppose you placed another cubic foot of water on top of the first cubic foot. The pressure on the top surface of the first cube which was originally atmospheric, or 0 psig, would now be 0.4333 psig as a result of the additional cubic foot of water. The pressure of the base of the first cubic foot would be increased by the same amount of 0.866 psig or two times the original pressure.

Pressures are very frequently stated in terms of the height of a fluid. If it is the same fluid whose pressure is being given, it is usually called "head," and the factor connecting the head and the pressure is the weight density pg. In the English engineer's system, weight density is in pounds per cubic inch or cubic foot. A head of 10 ft is equivalent to a pressure of 624 psf, or 4.33 psi. It can also be considered an energy availability of ft-lb per lb. Water with a pressure head of 10 ft can furnish the same energy as an equal amount of water raised by 10 ft. Water flowing in a pipe is subject to head loss because of friction.

Take a jar and a basin of water. Fill the jar with water and invert it under the water in the basin. Now raise the jar as far as you can without allowing its mouth to come above the water surface. It is always a little surprising to see that the jar does not empty itself, but the water remains with no visible means of support. By blowing through a straw, one can put air into the jar, and as much water leaves as air enters. In fact, this is a famous method of collecting insoluble gases in

the chemical laboratory, or for supplying hummingbird feeders. It is good to remind oneself of exactly the balance of forces involved.

Another application of pressure is the siphon. The name is Greek for the tube that was used for drawing wine from a cask. This is a tube filled with fluid connecting two containers of fluid, normally rising higher than the water levels in the two containers, at least to pass over their rims. In the diagram, the two water levels are the same, so there will be no flow. When a siphon goes below the free water levels, it is called an inverted siphon. If the levels in the two basins are not equal, fluid flows from the basin with the higher level into the one with the lower level, until the levels are equal.



A siphon can be made by filling the tube, closing the ends, and then putting the ends under the surface on both sides. Alternatively, the tube can be placed in one fluid and filled by sucking on it. When it is full, the other end is put in place. The analysis of the siphon is easy, and should be obvious. The pressure rises or falls as described by the barometric equation through the siphon tube. There is obviously a maximum height for the siphon which is the same as the limit of the suction pump, about 34 feet. Inverted siphons are sometimes used in pipelines to cross valleys. Differences in elevation are usually too great to use regular siphons to cross hills, so the fluids must be pressurized by pumps so the pressure does not fall to zero at the crests.

# Liquids at Rest

In studying fluids at rest, we are concerned with the transmission of force and the factors which affect the forces in liquids. Additionally, pressure in and on liquids and factors affecting pressure are of great importance.

#### **Pressure and Force**

Pressure is the force that pushes water through pipes. Water pressure determines the flow of water from the tap. If pressure is not sufficient then the flow can reduce to a trickle and it will take a long time to fill a kettle or a cistern.

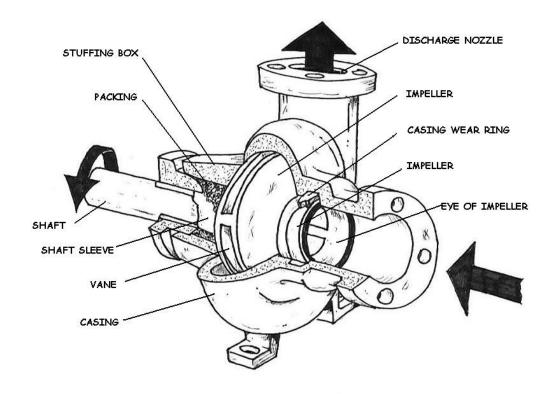
The terms **force** and **pressure** are used extensively in the study of fluid power. It is essential that we distinguish between the terms.

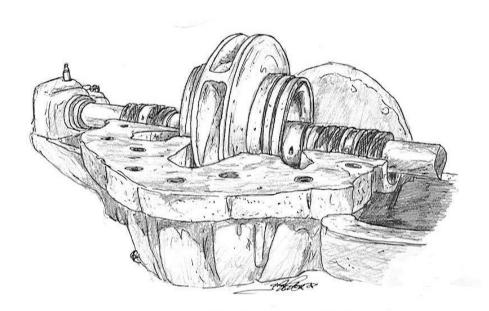
Force means a total push or pull. It is the push or pull exerted against the total area of a particular surface and is expressed in pounds or grams. Pressure means the amount of push or pull (force) applied to each unit area of the surface and is expressed in pounds per square inch (lb/in²) or grams per square centimeter (gm/cm²). Pressure maybe exerted in one direction, in several directions, or in all directions.

# **Computing Force, Pressure, and Area**

A formula is used in computing force, pressure, and area in fluid power systems. In this formula, P refers to pressure, F indicates force, and A represents area. Force equals pressure times area. Thus, the formula is written:







CENTRIFUGAL PUMP

# **Development of Hydraulics**

Although the modern development of hydraulics is comparatively recent, the ancients were familiar with many hydraulic principles and their applications. The Egyptians and the ancient people of Persia, India, and China conveyed water along channels for irrigation and domestic purposes, using dams and sluice gates to control the flow. The ancient Cretans had an elaborate plumbing system. Archimedes studied the laws of floating and submerged bodies. The Romans constructed aqueducts to carry water to their cities.

After the breakup of the ancient world, there were few new developments for many centuries. Then, over a comparatively short period, beginning near the end of the seventeenth century, Italian physicist, Evangelista Torricelle, French physicist, Edme Mariotte, and later, Daniel Bernoulli conducted experiments to study the elements of force in the discharge of water through small openings in the sides of tanks and through short pipes. During the same period, Blaise Pascal, a French scientist, discovered the fundamental law for the science of hydraulics. Pascal's law states that increase in pressure on the surface of a confined fluid is transmitted undiminished throughout the confining vessel or system.

For Pascal's law to be made effective for practical applications, it was necessary to have a piston that "fit exactly." It was not until the latter part of the eighteenth century that methods were found to make these snugly fitted parts required in hydraulic systems. This was accomplished by the invention of machines that were used to cut and shape the necessary closely fitted parts and, particularly, by the development of gaskets and packings. Since that time, components such as valves, pumps, actuating cylinders, and motors have been developed and refined to make hydraulics one of the leading methods of transmitting power.

Liquids are almost incompressible. For example, if a pressure of 100 pounds per square inch (**psi**) is applied to a given volume of water that is at atmospheric pressure, the volume will decrease by only 0.03 percent. It would take a force of approximately 32 tons to reduce its volume by 10 percent; however, when this force is removed, the water immediately returns to its original volume. Other liquids behave in about the same manner as water.

Another characteristic of a liquid is the tendency to keep its free surface level. If the surface is not level, liquids will flow in the direction which will tend to *make* the surface level.

# **Evangelista Torricelli**

Evangelista Torricelli (1608-1647), Galileo's student and secretary and a member of the Florentine Academy of Experiments, invented the mercury barometer in 1643, and brought the weight of the atmosphere to light. The mercury column was held up by the pressure of the atmosphere, not by horror vacui as Aristotle had supposed. Torricelli's early death was a blow to science, but his ideas were furthered by Blaise Pascal (1623-1662).

Pascal had a barometer carried up the 1465 m high Puy de Dôme, an extinct volcano in the Auvergne just west of his home of Clermont-Ferrand in 1648 by Périer, his brother-in-law. Pascal's experimentum crucis is one of the triumphs of early modern science. The Puy de Dôme is not the highest peak in the Massif Central--the Puy de Sancy, at 1866 m is, but it was the closest. Clermont is now the center of the French pneumatics industry.

# **Burgomeister of Magdeburg**

The remarkable Otto von Guericke (1602-1686), Burgomeister of Magdeburg, Saxony, took up

the cause, making the first vacuum pump, which he used in vivid demonstrations of the pressure of the atmosphere to the Imperial Diet at Regensburg in 1654. Famously, he evacuated a sphere consisting of two well-fitting hemispheres about a foot in diameter, and showed that 16 horses, 8 on each side, could not pull them apart. An original vacuum pump and hemispheres from 1663 are shown at the right (photo edited from the Deutsches Museum; see on right). He also showed that air had weight, and how much force it did require to separate evacuated hemispheres. Then, in England, Robert Hooke (1635-1703) made a vacuum pump for Robert Boyle (1627-1691). Christian Huygens (1629-1695) became interested in a visit to London in 1661 and had a vacuum pump built for him.



By this time, Torricelli's doctrine had triumphed over the Church's support for horror vacui. This was one of the first victories for rational physics over the illusions of experience, and is well worth consideration.

Pascal demonstrated that the siphon worked by atmospheric pressure, not by horror vacui. The two beakers of mercury are connected by a three-way tube as shown, with the upper branch open to the atmosphere. As the large container is filled with water, pressure on the free surfaces of the mercury in the beakers pushes mercury into the tubes. When the state shown is reached, the beakers are connected by a mercury column, and the siphon starts, emptying the upper beaker and filling the lower. The mercury has been open to the atmosphere all this time, so if there were any horror vacui, it could have flowed in at will to soothe itself.

#### Torr

The mm of mercury is sometimes called a torr after Torricelli, and Pascal also has been honored by a unit of pressure, a newton per square meter or 10 dyne/cm2. A cubic centimeter of air weighs 1.293 mg under standard conditions, and a cubic meter 1.293 kg, so air is by no means even approximately weightless, though it seems so. The weight of a sphere of air as small as 10 cm in diameter is 0.68 g, easily measurable with a chemical balance. The pressure of the atmosphere is also considerable, like being 34 ft under water, but we do not notice it. A bar is 106 dyne/cm2, very close to a standard atmosphere, which is 1.01325 bar. In meteorology, the millibar, mb, is used. 1 mb = 1.333 mmHg = 100 Pa = 1000 dyne/cm2.

A kilogram-force per square centimeter is 981,000 dyne/cm2, also close to one atmosphere. In Europe, it has been considered approximately 1 atm, as in tire pressures and other engineering applications. As we have seen, in English units the atmosphere is about 14.7 psi, and this figure can be used to find other approximate equivalents. For example, 1 psi = 51.7 mmHg. In Britain, tons per square inch has been used for large pressures. The ton in this case is 2240 lb, not the American short ton. 1 tsi = 2240 psi, 1 tsf = 15.5 psi (about an atmosphere!). The fluid in question here is air, which is by no means incompressible. As we rise in the atmosphere and the pressure decreases, the air also expands.

To see what happens in this case, we can make use of the ideal gas equation of state,  $p = \rho RT/M$ , and assume that the temperature T is constant. Then the change of pressure in a change of altitude dh is dp =  $-\rho g$  dh =  $-(\rho M/RT)$  gdh, or dp/p = -(Mg/RT) dh.

This is a little harder to integrate than before, but the result is  $\ln p = -Mgh/RT + C$ , or  $\ln (p/p0) = -Mgh/RT$ , or finally p = p0exp (-Mgh/RT).

In an isothermal atmosphere, the pressure decreases exponentially. The quantity H = RT/Mg is called the "height of the homogeneous atmosphere" or the scale height, and is about 8 km at T = 273K.

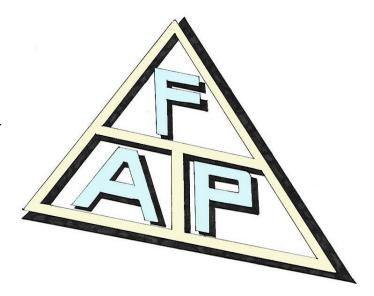
This quantity gives the rough scale of the decrease of pressure with height. Of course, the real atmosphere is by no means isothermal close to the ground, but cools with height nearly linearly at about 6.5°C/km up to an altitude of about 11 km at middle latitudes, called the tropopause.

Above this is a region of nearly constant temperature, the stratosphere, and then at some higher level the atmosphere warms again to near its value at the surface. Of course, there are variations from the average values. When the temperature profile with height is known, we can find the pressure by numerical integration quite easily.

# Meteorology

The atmospheric pressure is of great importance in meteorology, since it determines the winds, which generally move at right angles to the direction of the most rapid change of pressure, that is, along the isobars, which are contours of constant pressure. Certain typical weather patterns are associated with relatively high and relatively low pressures, and how they vary with time. The barometric pressure may be given in popular weather forecasts, though few people know what to do with it. If you live at a high altitude, your local weather reporter may report the pressure to be, say, 29.2 inches, but if you have a real barometer, you may well find that it is closer to 25 inches. At an elevation of 1500 m (near Denver, or the top of the Puy de Dôme), the atmospheric pressure is about 635 mm, and water boils at 95 °C.

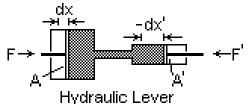
In fact, altitude is quite a problem in meteorology, since pressures must be measured at a common level to be meaningful. The barometric pressures quoted in the news are reduced to sea level by standard formulas that amount to assuming that there is a column of air from your feet to sea level with a certain temperature distribution, and adding the weight of this column to the actual barometric pressure. This is only an arbitrary 'fix' and leads to some strange conclusions, such as the permanent winter highs above high plateaus that are really imaginary.



# The Hydraulic Lever

A cylinder and piston is a chamber of variable volume, a mechanism for transforming pressure to force.

If A is the area of the cylinder, and p the pressure of the fluid in it, then F = pA is the force on the piston. If the piston moves outwards a distance dx, then the change in volume is dV = A dx.



The work done by the fluid in this displacement is dW

= F dx = pA dx = p dV. If the movement is slow enough that inertia and viscosity forces are negligible, then hydrostatics will still be valid. A process for which this is true is called quasistatic. Now consider two cylinders, possibly of different areas A and A', connected with each other and filled with fluid. For simplicity, suppose that there are no gravitational forces.

Then the pressure is the same, p, in both cylinders. If the fluid is incompressible, then dV + dV' = 0, so that  $dW = p \, dV + p \, dV' = F \, dx + F' \, dx' = 0$ . This says the work done on one piston is equal to the work done by the other piston: the conservation of energy. The ratio of the forces on the pistons is F' / F = A' / A, the same as the ratio of the areas, and the ratios of the displacements dx' / dx = F / F' = A / A' is in the inverse ratio of the areas. This mechanism is the hydrostatic analogue of the lever, and is the basis of hydraulic activation.

# **Bramah Hydraulic Press**

The most famous application of this principle is the Bramah hydraulic press, invented by Joseph Bramah (1748-1814), who also invented many other useful machines, including a lock and a toilet. Now, it was not very remarkable to see the possibility of a hydraulic press; what was remarkable was to find a way to seal the large cylinder properly.

This was the crucial problem that Bramah solved by his leather seal that was held against the cylinder and the piston by the hydraulic pressure itself. In the presence of gravity,  $p' = p + \rho gh$ , where h is the difference in elevation of the two cylinders. Now,  $p' dV' = -dV (p + \rho gh) = -p dV - (\rho dV) gh$ , or the net work done in the process is p' dV' + p dV = -dM gh, where dM is the mass of fluid displaced from the lower cylinder to the upper cylinder. Again, energy is conserved if we take into account the potential energy of the fluid. Pumps are seen to fall within the province of hydrostatics if their operation is quasi-static, which means that dynamic or inertia forces are negligible.

# **Pumps**

Pumps are used to move or raise fluids. They are not only very useful, but are excellent examples of hydrostatics. Pumps are of two general types, hydrostatic or positive displacement pumps, and pumps depending on dynamic forces, such as centrifugal pumps. Here we will only consider positive displacement pumps, which can be understood purely by hydrostatic considerations. They have a piston (or equivalent) moving in a closely-fitting cylinder and forces are exerted on the fluid by motion of the piston. We have already seen an important example of this in the hydraulic lever or hydraulic press, which we have called quasi-static.

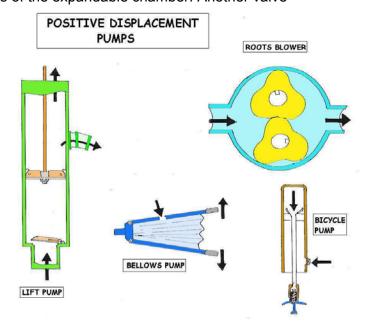
The simplest pump is the syringe, filled by withdrawing the piston and emptied by pressing it back in, as its port is immersed in the fluid or removed from it. More complicated pumps have valves allowing them to work repetitively. These are usually check valves that open to allow passage in one direction, and close automatically to prevent reverse flow. There are many kinds of valves, and they are usually the most trouble-prone and complicated part of a pump. The force pump has two check valves in the cylinder, one for supply and the other for delivery. The supply valve opens when the cylinder volume increases, the delivery valve when the cylinder volume decreases.

The lift pump has a supply valve and a valve in the piston that allows the liquid to pass around it when the volume of the cylinder is reduced. The delivery in this case is from the upper part of the cylinder which the piston does not enter. Diaphragm pumps are force pumps in which the oscillating diaphragm takes the place of the piston. The diaphragm may be moved mechanically, or by the pressure of the fluid on one side of the diaphragm.

Some positive displacement pumps are shown below. The force and lift pumps are typically used for water. The force pump has two valves in the cylinder, while the lift pump has a one valve in the cylinder and one in the piston. The maximum lift, or "suction," is determined by the atmospheric pressure, and either cylinder must be within this height of the free surface. The force pump, however, can give an arbitrarily large pressure to the discharged fluid, as in the case of a diesel engine injector. A nozzle can be used to convert the pressure to velocity, to produce a jet, as for firefighting. Fire fighting force pumps usually have two cylinders feeding one receiver alternately. The air space in the receiver helps to make the water pressure uniform.

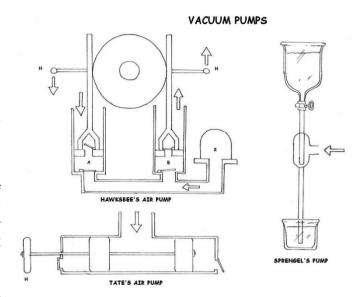
The three pumps on the right are typically used for air, but would be equally applicable to liquids. The Roots blower has no valves, their place taken by the sliding contact between the rotors and the housing. The Roots blower can either exhaust a receiver or provide air under moderate pressure, in large volumes. The bellows is a very old device, requiring no accurate machining. The single valve is in one or both sides of the expandable chamber. Another valve

can be placed at the nozzle if required. The valve can be a piece of soft leather held close to holes in the chamber. The bicycle pump uses the valve on the valve stem of the tire or inner tube to hold pressure in the tire. The piston, which is attached to the discharge tube, has a flexible seal that seals when the cylinder is moved to compress the air, but allows air to pass when the movement is reversed. Diaphragm and vane pumps are not shown, but they act the same way by varying the volume of a chamber, and directing the flow with check valves. Pumps were applied to the dewatering of mines, a very necessary process as mines became deeper. Newcomen's atmospheric engine was invented to supply the power for pumping.



# **Dudley Castle Engine**

The first engine may have been erected in Cornwall in 1710, but the Dudley Castle engine of 1712 is much better known and thoroughly documented. The first pumps used in Cornwall were called bucket pumps. which we recognize as lift pumps, with the pistons somewhat miscalled buckets. They pumped on the up-stroke, when a clack in the bottom of the pipe opened and allowed water to enter beneath the piston. At the same time, the piston lifted the column of water above it, which could be of any length. The piston could only "suck" water 33 ft, or 28 ft more practically, of course, but this occurred at the bottom of the shaft, so this was only a limit on the piston stroke. On the down stroke, a clack in the bucket



opened, allowing it to sink through the water to the bottom, where it would be ready to make another lift. More satisfactory were the plunger pumps, also placed at the bottom of the shaft. A plunger displaced volume in a chamber, forcing the water in it through a check valve up the shaft, when it descended. When it rose, water entered the pump chamber through a clack, as in the bucket pump.

Only the top of the plunger had to be packed; it was not necessary that it fit the cylinder accurately. In this case, the engine at the surface lifted the heavy pump rods on the up-stroke. When the atmospheric engine piston returned, the heavy timber pump rods did the actual pumping, borne down by their weight. A special application for pumps is to produce a vacuum by exhausting a container, called the receiver.

# Hawksbee's Dual Cylinder Pump

Hawksbee's dual cylinder pump, designed in the 18th century, is the final form of the air pump invented by Guericke by 1654. A good pump could probably reach about 5-10 mmHg, the limit set by the valves. The cooperation of the cylinders made the pump much easier to work when the pressure was low. In the diagram, piston A is descending, helped by the partial vacuum remaining below it, while piston B is rising, filling with the low-pressure air from the receiver.

# **Bell-jar Receiver**

The bell-jar receiver, invented by Huygens, is shown; previously, a cumbersome globe was the usual receiver. Tate's air pump is a 19th century pump that would be used for simple vacuum demonstrations and for utility purposes in the lab. It has no valves on the low-pressure side, just exhaust valves V, V', so it could probably reach about 1 mmHg. It is operated by pushing and pulling the handle H. At the present day, motor-driven rotary-seal pumps sealed by running in oil are used for the same purpose. At the right is Sprengel's pump, with the valves replaced by drops of mercury.

Small amounts of gas are trapped at the top of the fall tube as the mercury drops, and moves slowly down the fall tube as mercury is steadily added, coming out at the bottom carrying the air with it. The length of the fall tube must be greater than the barometric height, of course.

Theoretically, a vacuum of about 1 µm can be obtained with a Sprengel pump, but it is very slow and can only evacuate small volumes. Later, Langmuir's mercury diffusion pump, which was much faster, replaced Sprengel pumps, and led to oil diffusion pumps that can reach very high vacua. The column of water or hydrostatic engine is the inverse of the force pump, used to turn a large head (pressure) of water into rotary motion. It looks like a steam engine, with valves operated by valve gear, but of course is not a heat engine and can be of high efficiency.

However, it is not of as high efficiency as a turbine, and is much more complicated, but has the advantage that it can be operated at variable speeds, as for lifting. A few very impressive column of water engines were made in the 19th century, but they were never popular and remained rare. Richard Trevithick, famous for high pressure steam engines, also built hydrostatic engines in Cornwall. The photograph at the right shows a column-of-water engine built by Georg von Reichenbach, and placed in service in 1917. This engine was exhibited in the Deutsches Museum in München as late as 1977.

It was used to pump brine for the Bavarian state salt industry. A search of the museum website did not reveal any evidence of it, but a good drawing of another brine pump with four cylinders and driven by a water wheel, also built by von Reichenbach, was found.

#### Solehebemaschine

This machine, a Solehebemaschine ("brine-lifting machine"), entered service in 1821. It had two

pressure-operated poppet valves for each cylinder. These engines are brass to resist corrosion by the salt water. Water pressure engines must be designed taking into account the incompressibility of water, so both valves must not close at the same time, and abrupt changes of rate of flow must not be made. Air chambers can be used to eliminate shocks. Georg von Reichenbach (1771-1826) is much better known as an optical designer than as a mechanical engineer. He was associated with Joseph Fraunhofer, and they died within days of each other in 1826. He was of an aristocratic family, and was Salinenrat, or manager of the state salt works, in southeastern Bavaria, which was centered on the town of Reichenhall, now Bad Reichenhall, near Salzburg.

The name derives from "rich in salt." This famous salt region had salt springs flowing nearly saturated brine, at 24% to 26% (saturated is 27%) salt, that from ancient times had been evaporated over wood



fires. A brine pipeline to Traunstein was constructed in 1617-1619, since wood fuel for evaporating the brine was exhausted in Reichenhall. The pipeline was further extended to Rosenheim, where there was turf as well as wood, in 1818-10. Von Reichenbach is said to have built this pipeline, for which he designed a water-wheel-driven, four-barrel pump. Maximilian I, King of Bavaria, commissioned von Reichenbach to bring brine from Berchtesgaden, elevation 530 m, to Reichenhall, elevation 470 m, over a summit 943 m high.

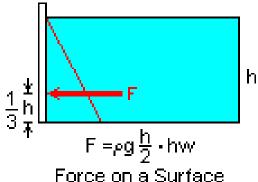
# **Forces on Submerged Surfaces**

Suppose we want to know the force exerted on a vertical surface of any shape with water on one side, assuming gravity to act, and the pressure on the surface of the water zero. We have

already solved this problem by a geometrical argument, but now we apply calculus, which is easier but not as illuminating.

The force on a small area dA a distance x below the surface of the water is dF = p dA = pgx dA, and the moment of this force about a point on the surface is dM = px dA = pgx2 dA.

By integration, we can find the total force F, and the depth at which it acts, c = M / F. If the surface is not symmetrical, the position of the total force in the transverse direction can be obtained from the



integral of dM' = pgxy dA, the moment about some vertical line in the plane of the surface. If there happens to be a pressure on the free surface of the water, then the forces due to this pressure can be evaluated separately and added to this result. We must add a force equal to the area of the surface times the additional pressure, and a moment equal to the product of this force and the distance to the centroid of the surface.

The simplest case is a rectangular gate of width w, and height h, whose top is a distance H below the surface of the water.

In this case, the integrations are very easy, and  $F = \rho g w [(h + H) 2 - h2]/2 = \rho g H (H + 2h)/2 = \rho g (h + H/2) Hw.$ 

The total force on the gate is equal to its area times the pressure at its centre. M = pgw [(h + H) 3 - h3]/3 = pg (H2/3 + Hh + h2) Hw, so that <math>c = (H2/3 + Hh + h2)/(h + H/2).

In the simple case of h = 0, c = 2H/3, or two-thirds of the way from the top to the bottom of the gate. If we take the atmospheric pressure to act not only on the surface of the water, but also the dry side of the gate, there is no change to this result. This is the reason atmospheric pressure often seems to have been neglected in solving sub h problems.

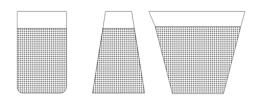
Consider a curious rectangular tank, with one side vertical but the opposite side inclined inwards or outwards. The horizontal forces exerted by the water on the two sides must be equal and opposite, or the tank would scoot off. If the side is inclined outward, then there must be a downward vertical force equal to the weight of the water above it, and passing through the centroid of this water. If the side is inclined inward, there must be an upward vertical force equal to the weight of the 'missing' water above it. In both cases, the result is demanded by ordinary statics.

# **Hydrostatic Paradox**

What we have here has been called the 'hydrostatic paradox.' It was conceived by the celebrated Flemish engineer Simon Stevin (1548-1620) of Brugge, the first modern scientist to investigate the statics of fluids and solids. Consider three tanks with bottoms of equal sizes and equal heights, filled with water. The pressures at the bottoms are equal, so the vertical force on the bottom of each tank is the same. But suppose that one tank has vertical sides, one has sides inclined inward, and third sides inclined outwards. The tanks do not contain the same weight of water, yet the forces on their bottoms are equal! I am sure that you can spot the resolution of this paradox.

Sometimes the forces are required on curved surfaces. The vertical and horizontal components can be found by considering the equilibrium of volumes with a plane surface equal to the projected area of the curved surface in that direction. The general result is usually a force plus a couple, since the horizontal and vertical forces are not necessarily in the same plane. Simple surfaces, such as cylinders, spheres and cones, may often be easy to solve. In general, however, it is necessary to sum the

# **Hydrostatic Paradox**



forces and moments numerically on each element of area, and only in simple cases can this be done analytically.

If a volume of fluid is accelerated uniformly, the acceleration can be added to the acceleration of gravity. A free surface now becomes perpendicular to the total acceleration, and the pressure is proportional to the distance from this surface. The same can be done for a rotating fluid, where the centrifugal acceleration is the important quantity. The earth's atmosphere is an example. When air moves relative to the rotating system, the Coriolis force must also be taken into account. However, these are dynamic effects and are not strictly a part of hydrostatics.

# **Buoyancy**

Archimedes, so the legend runs, was asked to determine if the goldsmith who made a golden crown for Hieron, Tyrant of Syracuse, had substituted cheaper metals for gold. The story is told by Vitruvius. A substitution could not be detected by simply weighing the crown, since it was craftily made to the same weight as the gold supplied for its construction. Archimedes realized that finding the density of the crown, that is, the weight per unit volume, would give the answer. The weight was known, of course, and Archimedes cunningly measured its volume by the amount of water that ran off when it was immersed in a vessel filled to the brim. By comparing the results for the crown, and for pure gold, it was found that the crown displaced more water than an equal weight of gold, and had, therefore, been adulterated. This story, typical of the charming way science was made more interesting in classical times, may or may not actually have taken place, but whether it did or not, Archimedes taught that a body immersed in a fluid lost apparent weight equal to the weight of the fluid displaced, called Archimedes' Principle. Specific gravity, the ratio of the density of a substance to the density of water, can be determined by weighing the body in air, and then in water. The specific gravity is the weight in air divided by the loss in weight when immersed. This avoids the difficult determination of the exact volume of the sample.

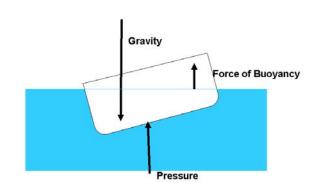
# **How Buoyancy Works**

To see how buoyancy works, consider a submerged brick, of height h, width w and length l. The difference in pressure on top and bottom of the brick is  $\rho gh$ , so the difference in total force on top and bottom of the brick is simply  $(\rho gh)$  (wl) =

pgV, where V is the volume of the brick.

The forces on the sides have no vertical components, so they do not matter. The net upward force is the weight of a volume V of the fluid of density p. Anybody can be considered made up of brick shapes, as small as desired, so the result applies in general. This is just the integral calculus in action, or the application of Professor Thomson's analogy.

Consider a man in a rowboat on a lake, with a large rock in the boat. He throws the rock into the



Change of Ship Stability

water. What is the effect on the water level of the lake? Suppose you make a drink of ice water with ice cubes floating in it. What happens to the water level in the glass when the ice has melted?

The force exerted by the water on the bottom of a boat acts through the centre of gravity B of the displaced volume, while the force exerted by gravity on the boat acts through its own centre of gravity A. This looks bad for the boat, since the boat's c.g. will naturally be higher than the c.g. of the displaced water, so the boat will tend to capsize. Well, a board floats, and can tell us why. Should the board start to rotate to one side, the displaced volume immediately moves to that side, and the buoyant force tends to correct the rotation. A floating body will be stable provided the line of action of the buoyant force passes through a point M above the c.g. of the body, called the metacenter, so that there is a restoring couple when the boat heels. A ship with an improperly designed hull will not float. It is not as easy to make boats as it might appear.

# Montgolfier Brothers' Hot Air Balloon

Archimedes' Principle can also be applied to balloons. The Montgolfier brothers' hot air balloon with a paper envelope ascended first in 1783 (the brothers got Pilâtre de Rozier and Chevalier d'Arlandes to go up in it). Such "fire balloons" were then replaced with hydrogen-filled balloons, and then with balloons filled with coal gas, which was easier to obtain and did not diffuse through the envelope quite as rapidly. Methane would be a good filler, with a density 0.55 that of air. Slack balloons, like most large ones, can be contrasted with taut balloons with an elastic envelope, such as weather balloons. Slack balloons will not be filled full on the ground, and will plump up at altitude. Balloons are naturally stable, since the center of buoyancy is above the center of gravity in all practical balloons. Submarines are yet another application of buoyancy, with their own characteristic problems. Small neoprene or natural rubber balloons have been used for meteorological observations, with hydrogen filling. A 10g ceiling balloon was about 17" in diameter when inflated to have a free lift of 40g. It ascended 480ft the first minute, 670ft in a minute and a half, and 360ft per minute afterwards, to find cloud ceilings by timing, up to 2500ft, when it subtended about 2' of arc, easily seen in binoculars.

Large sounding balloons were used to lift a radiosonde and a parachute for its recovery. An AN/AMT-2 radiosonde of the 1950's weighed 1500g, the paper parachute 100g, and the balloon 350g. The balloon was inflated to give 800g free lift, so it would rise 700-800 ft/min to an altitude of about 50,000 ft (15 km) before it burst. This balloon was about 6 ft in diameter when inflated at the surface, 3 ft in diameter before inflation. The information was returned by radio telemetry, so the balloon did not have to be followed optically. Of intermediate size was the pilot balloon, which was followed with a theodolite to determine wind directions and speeds. At night, a pilot balloon could carry a light for ceiling determinations.

#### **Weather Balloons**

The greatest problem with using hydrogen for lift is that it diffuses rapidly through many substances. Weather balloons had to be launched promptly after filling, or the desired free lift would not be obtained. Helium is a little better in this respect, but it also diffuses rapidly. The lift obtained with helium is almost the same as with hydrogen (density 4 compared to 2, where air is 28.97). However, helium is exceedingly rare, and only its unusual occurrence in natural gas from Kansas makes it available. Great care must be taken when filling balloons with hydrogen to avoid sparks and the accumulation of hydrogen in air, since hydrogen is exceedingly flammable and explosive over a wide range of concentrations. Helium has the great advantage that it is not inflammable.

The hydrogen for filling weather balloons came from compressed gas in cylinders, from the reaction of granulated aluminum with sodium hydroxide and water, or from the reaction of calcium hydroxide with water. The chemical reactions are 2Al + 2NaOH + 2H2O  $\rightarrow$  2NaAlO2 + 3H2, or CaH2 + 2H2O  $\rightarrow$  Ca (OH) 2 + 2H2. In the first, silicon or zinc could be used instead of aluminum, and in the second, any similar metal hydride. Both are rather expensive sources of hydrogen, but very convenient when only small amounts are required. Most hydrogen is made from the catalytic decomposition of hydrocarbons, or the reaction of hot coke with steam.

Electrolysis of water is an expensive source, since more energy is used than is recovered with the hydrogen. Any enthusiasm for a "hydrogen economy" should be tempered by the fact that there are no hydrogen wells, and all the hydrogen must be made with an input of energy usually greater than that available from the hydrogen, and often with the appearance of carbon. Although about 60,000 Btu/lb is available from hydrogen, compared to 20,000 Btu/lb from gasoline, hydrogen compressed to 1000 psi requires 140 times as much volume for the same weight as gasoline. For the energy content of a 13-gallon gasoline tank, a 600-gallon hydrogen tank would be required. The critical temperature of hydrogen is 32K, so liquid storage is out of the question for general use.

## **Measurement of Specific Gravity**

The specific gravity of a material is the ratio of the mass (or weight) of a certain sample of it to the mass (or weight) of an equal volume of water, the conventional reference material. In the metric system, the density of water is 1 g/cc, which makes the specific gravity numerically equal to the density. Strictly speaking, density has the dimensions g/cc, while specific gravity is a dimensionless ratio. However, in casual speech the two are often confounded. In English units, however, density, perhaps in lb/cu.ft or pcf, is numerically different from the specific gravity, since the weight of water is 62.5 lb/cu.ft.

#### **Variations**

Things are complicated by the variation of the density of water with temperature, and also by the confusion that gave us the distinction between cc and ml. The milliliter is the volume of 1.0 g of water at 4°C, by definition. The actual volume of 1.0 g of water at 4°C is 0.999973 cm3 by measurement. Since most densities are not known, or needed, to more than three significant figures, it is clear that this difference is of no practical importance, and the ml can be taken equal to the cc. The density of water at 0°C is 0.99987 g/ml, at 20° 0.99823, and at 100°C 0.95838. The temperature dependence of the density may have to be taken into consideration in accurate work. Mercury, while we are at it, has a density 13.5955 at 0°C, and 13.5461 at 20°C.

The basic idea in finding specific gravity is to weigh a sample in air, and then immersed in water. Then the specific gravity is W/ (W - W'), if W is the weight in air, and W' the weight immersed. The denominator is just the buoyant force, the weight of a volume of water equal to the volume of the sample. This can be carried out with an ordinary balance, but special balances, such as the Jolly balance, have been created specifically for this application. Adding an extra weight to the sample allows measurement of specific gravities less than 1.

## **Pycnometer**

A pycnometer is a flask with a close-fitting ground glass stopper with a fine hole through it, so a given volume can be accurately obtained. The name comes from the Greek word meaning "density." If the flask is weighed empty, full of water, and full of a liquid whose specific gravity is desired, the specific gravity of the liquid can easily be calculated. A sample in the form of a powder, to which the usual method of weighing cannot be used, can be put into the pycnometer. The weight of the powder and the weight of the displaced water can be determined, and from them the specific gravity of the powder.

The specific gravity of a liquid can be found with a collection of small weighted, hollow spheres that will just float in certain specific gravities. The closest spheres that will just float and just sink put limits on the specific gravity of the liquid. This method was once used in Scotland to determine the amount of alcohol in distilled liquors. Since the density of a liquid decreases as the temperature increases, the spheres that float are an indication of the temperature of the liquid. Galileo's thermometer worked this way.

## Hydrometer

A better instrument is the hydrometer, which consists of a weighted float and a calibrated stem that protrudes from the liquid when the float is entirely immersed. A higher specific gravity will result in a greater length of the stem above the surface, while a lower specific gravity will cause the hydrometer to float lower.

The small cross-sectional area of the stem makes the instrument very sensitive. Of course, it must be calibrated against standards. In most cases, the graduations ("degrees") are arbitrary and reference is made to a table to determine the specific gravities. Hydrometers are used to determine the specific gravity of lead-acid battery electrolyte, and the concentration of antifreeze compounds in engine coolants, as well as the alcohol content of whiskey.

#### Pascal's Law

The foundation of modern hydraulics was established when Pascal discovered that pressure in a fluid acts equally in all directions. This pressure acts at right angles to the containing surfaces. If some type of pressure gauge, with an exposed face, is placed beneath the surface of a liquid at a specific depth and pointed in different directions, the pressure will read the same. Thus, we can say that pressure in a liquid is independent of direction.

Pressure due to the weight of a liquid, at any level, depends on the depth of the fluid from the surface. If the exposed face of the pressure gauges are moved closer to the surface of the liquid, the indicated pressure will be less. When the depth is doubled, the indicated pressure is doubled. Thus the pressure in a liquid is directly proportional to the depth. Consider a container with vertical sides that is 1 foot long and 1 foot wide. Let it be filled with water 1 foot deep, providing 1 cubic foot of water. 1 cubic foot of water weighs 62.4 pounds. Using this information and equation, P = F/A, we can calculate the pressure on the bottom of the container.

Since there are 144 square inches in 1 square foot, this can be stated as follows: the weight of a column of water 1 foot high, having a cross-sectional area of 1 square inch, is 0.433 pound. If the depth of the column is tripled, the weight of the column will be  $3 \times 0.433$ , or 1.299 pounds, and the pressure at the bottom will be 1.299 lb/in² (psi), since pressure equals the force divided by the area.

Thus, the pressure at any depth in a liquid is equal to the weight of the column of liquid at that depth divided by the cross-sectional area of the column at that depth. The volume of a liquid that produces the pressure is referred to as the fluid head of the liquid. The pressure of a liquid due to its fluid head is also dependent on the density of the liquid.

## Gravity

Gravity is one of the four forces of nature. The strength of the gravitational force between two objects depends on their masses. The more massive the objects are, the stronger the gravitational attraction. When you pour water out of a container, the earth's gravity pulls the water towards the ground. The same thing happens when you put two buckets of water, with a tube between them, at two different heights. You must work to start the flow of water from one bucket to the other, but then gravity takes over and the process will continue on its own.

Gravity, applied forces, and atmospheric pressure are static factors that apply equally to fluids at rest or in motion, while inertia and friction are dynamic factors that apply only to fluids in motion. The mathematical sum of gravity, applied force, and atmospheric pressure is the static pressure obtained at any one point in a fluid at any given time.

#### **Static Pressure**

Static pressure exists in addition to any dynamic factors that may also be present at the same time. Pascal's law states that a pressure set up in a fluid acts equally in all directions and at right angles to the containing surfaces. This covers the situation only for fluids at rest or practically at rest. It is true only for the factors making up static head.

Obviously, when velocity becomes a factor it must have a direction, and as previously explained, the force related to the velocity must also have a direction, so that Pascal's law alone does not apply to the dynamic factors of fluid power.

The dynamic factors of inertia and friction are related to the static factors. Velocity head and friction head are obtained at the expense of static head. However, a portion of the velocity head can always be reconverted to static head. Force, which can be produced by pressure or head when dealing with fluids, is necessary to start a body moving if it is at rest, and is present in some form when the motion of the body is arrested; therefore, whenever a fluid is given velocity, some part of its original static head is used to impart this velocity, which then exists as velocity head.

## **Volume and Velocity of Flow**

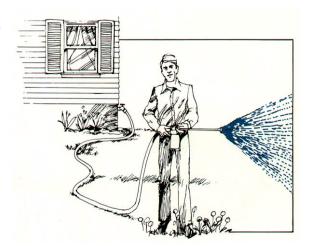
The volume of a liquid passing a point in a given time is known as its *volume of flow* or flow rate. The volume of flow is usually expressed in gallons per minute (gpm) and is associated with relative pressures of the liquid, such as 5 gpm at 40 psi. The *velocity of flow* or velocity of the fluid is defined as the average speed at which the fluid moves past a given point. It is usually expressed in feet per second (fps) or feet per minute (fpm). Velocity of flow is an important consideration in sizing the hydraulic lines. Volume and velocity of flow are often considered together. With other conditions unaltered—that is, with volume of input unchanged—the velocity of flow increases as the cross section or size of the pipe decreases, and the velocity of flow decreases as the cross section increases. For example, the velocity of flow is slow at wide parts of a stream and rapid at narrow parts, yet the volume of water passing each part of the stream is the same.

## Bernoulli's Principle

Bernoulli's principle thus says that a rise (fall) in pressure in a flowing fluid must always be accompanied by a decrease (increase) in the speed, and conversely, if an increase (decrease) in, the speed of the fluid results in a decrease (increase) in the pressure. This is at the heart of a

number of everyday phenomena. As a very trivial example, Bernoulli's principle is responsible for the fact that a shower curtain gets "sucked inwards" when the water is first turned on. What happens is that the increased water/air velocity inside the curtain (relative to the still air on the other side) causes a pressure drop.

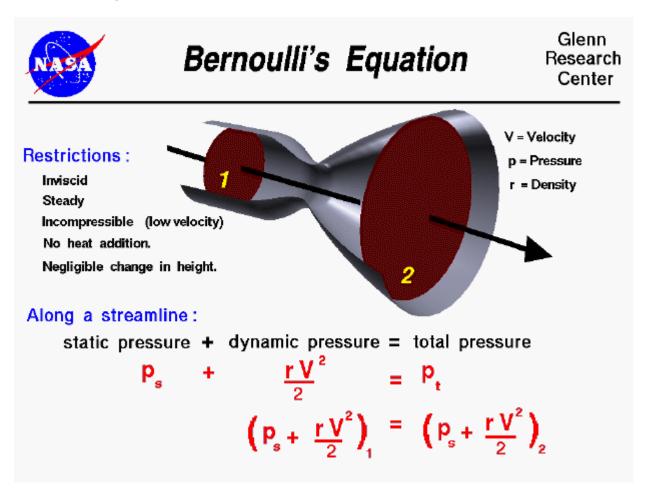
The pressure difference between the outside and inside causes a net force on the shower curtain which sucks it inward. A more useful example is provided by the functioning of a perfume bottle: squeezing the bulb over the fluid creates a low pressure area due to the higher speed of the air, which subsequently draws the fluid up. This is illustrated in the following figure.

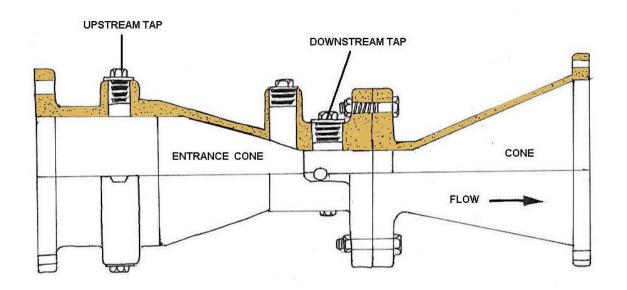


Action of a spray atomizer

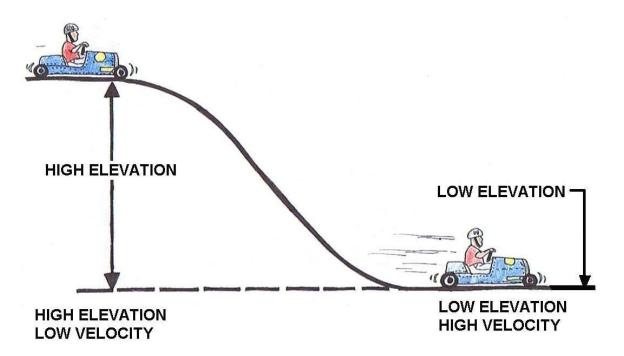
Bernoulli's principle also tells us why windows tend to explode, rather than implode in hurricanes: the very high speed of the air just outside the window causes the pressure just outside to be much less than the pressure inside, where the air is still. The difference in force pushes the windows outward, and hence they explode. If you know that a hurricane is coming it is therefore better to open as many windows as possible, to equalize the pressure inside and out.

Another example of Bernoulli's principle at work is in the lift of aircraft wings and the motion of "curve balls" in baseball. In both cases the design is such as to create a speed differential of the flowing air past the object on the top and the bottom - for aircraft wings this comes from the movement of the flaps, and for the baseball it is the presence of ridges. Such a speed differential leads to a pressure difference between the top and bottom of the object, resulting in a net force being exerted, either upwards or downwards.





## VENTURI TUBE





## **Understanding the Venturi**

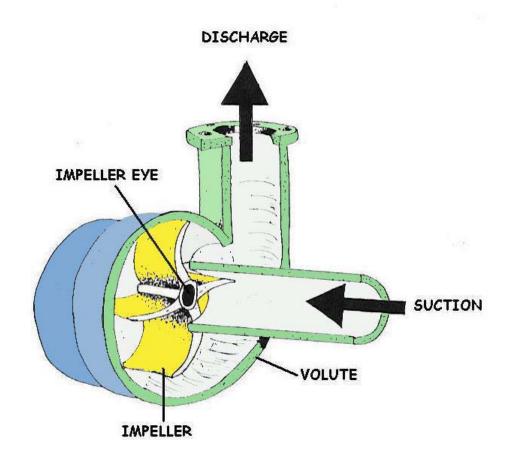
It is not easy to understand the reason low pressure occurs in the small diameter area of the venturi. This explanation may seem to help the principle.

It is clear that all the flow must pass from the larger section to the smaller section. Or in other words, the flow rate will remain the same in the large and small portions of the tube. The flow rate is the same rate, but the velocity changes. The velocity is greater in the small portion of the tube. There is a relationship between the pressure energy and the velocity energy; if velocity increases the pressure energy must decrease.

This is known as the principle of conservation of energy at work which is also Bernoulli's law. This is similar to the soapbox derby car in the illustration at the top of a hill. At the top or point, the elevation of the soapbox derby car is high and the velocity low. At the bottom the elevation is low and the velocity is high, elevation (potential) energy has been converted to velocity (kinetic) energy. Pressure and velocity energies behave in the same way. In the large part of the pipe the pressure is high and velocity is low, in the small part, pressure is low and velocity high.

## **Pump Introduction**

Pumps are used to move or raise fluids. They are not only very useful, but are excellent examples of hydrostatics. Pumps are of two general types, hydrostatic or positive displacement pumps, and pumps depending on dynamic forces, such as centrifugal pumps. Here we will only consider positive displacement pumps, which can be understood purely by hydrostatic considerations. They have a piston (or equivalent) moving in a closely-fitting cylinder and forces are exerted on the fluid by motion of the piston.



We have already seen an important example of this in the hydraulic lever or hydraulic press, which we have called quasi-static. The simplest pump is the syringe, filled by withdrawing the piston and emptied by pressing it back in, as its port is immersed in the fluid or removed from it.

#### **Pump Safety Regulations**

It is a necessity that your safety department establishes a safety program based upon a thorough analysis of industrial hazards. Before installing and operating or performing maintenance on the pump and associated components described in this manual, it is important to ensure that it covers the hazards arising from high speed rotating machinery. It is also important that due consideration be given to those hazards which arise from the presence of electrical power, hot oil, high pressure and temperature liquids, toxic liquids and gases, and flammable liquids and gases.

Proper installation and care of protective guards, shut-down devices and over pressure protection equipment must also be considered an essential part of any safety program.

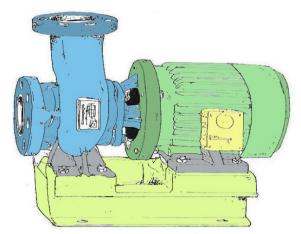
Also essential are special precautionary measures to prevent the possibility of applying power to the equipment at any time when maintenance work is in progress. The prevention of rotation due to reverse flow should not be overlooked. In general, all personnel should be guided by all the basic rules of safety associated with the equipment and the process. It should be understood that the information contained in this manual does not relieve operating and maintenance personnel of the responsibility of exercising good judgment in operation and care of the pump and its components.

In the following safety procedures you will encounter the words DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION, and NOTICE. These are intended to emphasize certain areas in the interest of personal safety and satisfactory pump operation and maintenance. The definitions of these words are as follows:

"DANGER" Danger is used to indicate the presence of a hazard which will cause severe personal injury, death, or substantial property damage if the warning is ignored.

**"WARNING"** Warning is used to indicate the presence of a hazard which can cause severe personal injury, death, or substantial property damage if the warning is ignored.

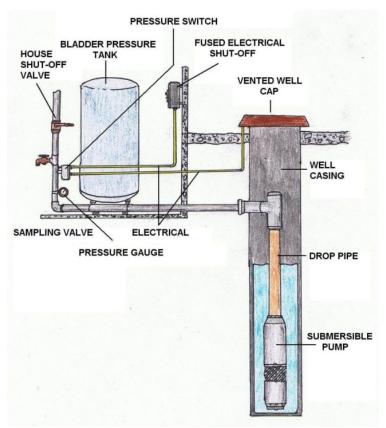
"CAUTION" Caution is used to indicate the presence of a hazard which will or can cause minor personal injury, death, or substantial property damage if the warning is ignored.



END SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMP

#### **Pump Applications**

Pumps are used throughout society for a variety of purposes. Early applications include the use of the windmill or watermill to pump water. Today, the pump is used for irrigation, water supply, gasoline supply, air conditioning systems, refrigeration (usually called a compressor), chemical movement, sewage movement, flood control, marine services, etc. Because of the wide variety of applications, pumps have a plethora of shapes and sizes: from very large to very small, from handling gas to handling liquid, from high pressure to low pressure, and from high volume to low volume.

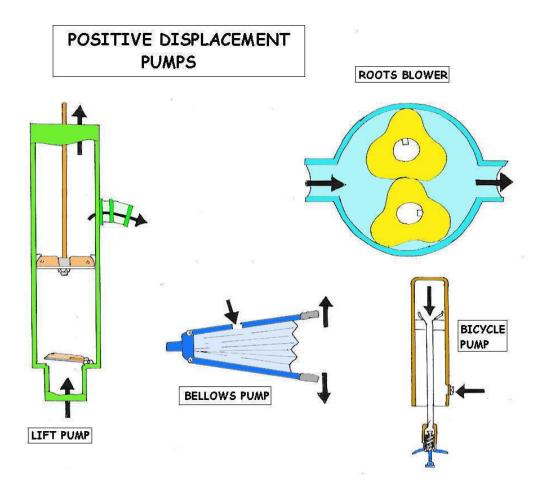


## **Complicated Pumps**

More complicated pumps have valves allowing them to work repetitively. These are usually check valves that open to allow passage in one direction, and close automatically to prevent reverse flow. There are many kinds of valves, and they are usually the most trouble-prone and complicated part of a pump. The force pump has two check valves in the cylinder, one for supply and the other for delivery. The supply valve opens when the cylinder volume increases, the delivery valve when the cylinder volume decreases. The lift pump has a supply valve and a valve in the piston that allows the liquid to pass around it when the volume of the cylinder is reduced. The delivery in this case is from the upper part of the cylinder, which the piston does not enter.

Diaphragm pumps are force pumps in which the oscillating diaphragm takes the place of the piston. The diaphragm may be moved mechanically, or by the pressure of the fluid on one side of the diaphragm.

Some positive displacement pumps are shown below. The force and lift pumps are typically used for water. The force pump has two valves in the cylinder, while the lift pump has one valve in the cylinder and one in the piston. The maximum lift, or "suction," is determined by the atmospheric pressure, and either cylinder must be within this height of the free surface. The force pump, however, can give an arbitrarily large pressure to the discharged fluid, as in the case of a diesel engine injector. A nozzle can be used to convert the pressure to velocity, to produce a jet, as for firefighting. Fire fighting force pumps usually have two cylinders feeding one receiver alternately. The air space in the receiver helps to make the water pressure uniform.



The three pumps above are typically used for air, but would be equally applicable to liquids. The Roots blower has no valves, their place taken by the sliding contact between the rotors and the housing. The Roots blower can either exhaust a receiver or provide air under moderate pressure, in large volumes. The Bellows is a very old device, requiring no accurate machining. The single valve is in one or both sides of the expandable chamber. Another valve can be placed at the nozzle if required. The valve can be a piece of soft leather held close to holes in the chamber. The Bicycle pump uses the valve on the valve stem of the tire or inner tube to hold pressure in the tire. The piston, which is attached to the discharge tube, has a flexible seal that seals when the cylinder is moved to compress the air, but allows air to pass when the movement is reversed.

Diaphragm and vane pumps are not shown, but they act the same way by varying the volume of a chamber, and directing the flow with check valves.

#### Fluid Properties

The properties of the fluids being pumped can significantly affect the choice of pump. Key considerations include:

• Acidity/alkalinity (pH) and chemical composition. Corrosive and acidic fluids can degrade pumps, and should be considered when selecting pump materials.

- **Operating temperature.** Pump materials and expansion, mechanical seal components, and packing materials need to be considered with pumped fluids that are hotter than 200°F.
- Solids concentrations/particle sizes. When pumping abrasive liquids such as industrial slurries, selecting a pump that will not clog or fail prematurely depends on particle size, hardness, and the volumetric percentage of solids.
- Specific gravity. The fluid specific gravity is the ratio of the fluid density to that of water under specified conditions. Specific gravity affects the energy required to lift and move the fluid, and must be considered when determining pump power requirements.
- Vapor pressure. A fluid's vapor pressure is the force per unit area that a fluid exerts in an effort to change phase from a liquid to a vapor, and depends on the fluid's chemical and physical properties. Proper consideration of the fluid's vapor pressure will help to minimize the risk of cavitation.
- **Viscosity.** The viscosity of a fluid is a measure of its resistance to motion. Since kinematic viscosity normally varies directly with temperature, the pumping system designer must know the viscosity of the fluid at the lowest anticipated pumping temperature. High viscosity fluids result in reduced centrifugal pump performance and increased power requirements. It is particularly important to consider pump suction-side line losses when pumping viscous fluids.

#### **Environmental Considerations**

Important environmental considerations include ambient temperature and humidity, elevation above sea level, and whether the pump is to be installed indoors or outdoors.

#### **Software Tools**

Most pump manufacturers have developed software or Web-based tools to assist in the pump selection process. Pump purchasers enter their fluid properties and system requirements to obtain a listing of suitable pumps. Software tools that allow you to evaluate and compare operating costs are available from private vendors.

#### **Pumps as Public Water Supplies**

One sort of pump once common worldwide was a hand-powered water pump, or 'pitcher pump'. It would be installed over a community water well that was used by people in the days before piped water supplies. Because water from pitcher pumps is drawn directly from the soil, it is more prone to contamination. If such water is not filtered and purified, consumption of it might lead to gastrointestinal or other water-borne diseases. A notorious case is the 1854 Broad Street cholera outbreak. At the time it was not known how cholera was transmitted, but physician John Snow suspected contaminated water and had the handle of the public pump he suspected removed; the outbreak then subsided.

Modern hand-operated community pumps are considered the most sustainable low-cost option for safe water supply in resource-poor settings, often in rural areas in developing countries. A hand pump opens access to deeper groundwater that is often not polluted and also improves the safety of a well by protecting the water source from contaminated buckets.

Pumps such as the Afridev pump are designed to be cheap to build and install, and easy to maintain with simple parts. However, scarcity of spare parts for these types of pumps in some regions of Africa has diminished their utility for these areas.

## **Types of Pumps**

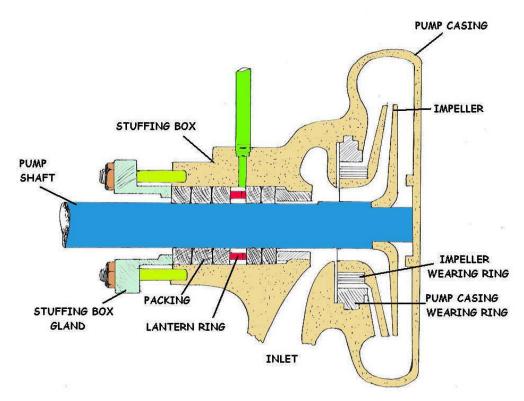
The family of pumps comprises a large number of types based on application and capabilities. The two major groups of pumps are dynamic and positive displacement.

### **Dynamic Pumps (Centrifugal Pump)**

Centrifugal pumps are classified into three general categories:

**Radial flow**—a centrifugal pump in which the pressure is developed wholly by centrifugal force. **Mixed flow**—a centrifugal pump in which the pressure is developed partly by centrifugal force and partly by the lift of the vanes of the impeller on the liquid.

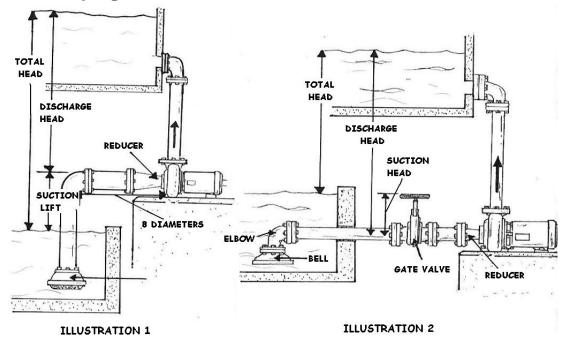
**Axial flow**—a centrifugal pump in which the pressure is developed by the propelling or lifting action of the vanes of the impeller on the liquid.



## A centrifugal pump has two main components:

- I. A rotating component comprised of an impeller and a shaft
- II. A stationary component comprised of a casing, casing cover, and bearings.

## **General Pumping Fundamentals**



Here are the important points to consider about suction piping when the liquid being pumped is below the level of the pump:

- First, suction lift is when the level of water to be pumped is below the centerline of the pump. Sometimes suction lift is also referred to as 'negative suction head'.
- The ability of the pump to lift water is the result of a partial vacuum created at the center of the pump.
- This works similar to sucking soda from a straw. As you gently suck on a straw, you are
  creating a vacuum or a pressure differential. Less pressure is exerted on the liquid inside
  the straw, so that the greater pressure is exerted on the liquid around the outside of the
  straw, causing the liquid in the straw to move up. By sucking on the straw, this allows
  atmospheric pressure to move the liquid.
- Look at the diagram illustrated as "1". The foot valve is located at the end of the suction pipe of a pump. It opens to allow water to enter the suction side, but closes to prevent water from passing back out of the bottom end.
- The suction side of pipe should be one diameter larger than the pump inlet. The required eccentric reducer should be turned so that the top is flat and the bottom tapered.

Notice in illustration "2" that the liquid is above the level of the pump. Sometimes this is referred to as *'flooded suction'* or *'suction head'* situations.

#### Points to Note are:

If an elbow and bell are used, they should be at least one pipe diameter from the tank bottom and side. This type of suction piping must have a gate valve which can be used to prevent the reverse flow when the pump has to be removed. In the illustrations you can see in both cases the discharge head is from the centerline of the pump to the level of the discharge water. The total head is the difference between the two liquid levels.

## **Pump Types come in Two Main Categories**

Centrifugal Pumps and Positive Displacement Pumps as classified according to the method of how the energy is imparted to the fluid – Kinetic Energy or Positive Displacement and again each of these categories having many pump types.

#### **Centrifugal Pump**

Types the Kinetic Energy type which imparts velocity energy to the pumped medium which is converted to pressure energy when discharging the pump casing and can be grouped according to several criteria, further to that a specific pump can belong to different groups.

#### These groups can be based upon:

The impeller suction
The number of impellers
The type of volute
International industry standards
Shaft orientation
Split case orientation
Driver pump types

#### **Positive Displacement Pump**

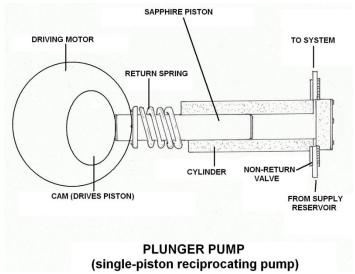
Types impart energy by mechanical displacement, these are of a lower flow range and are pulsating. PD pumps divided into two classes – reciprocating and rotary. Typical 'PD' pump types are:

#### **Rotary Pump Types:**

Rotary Gear Pumps
Peripheral Pumps
Screw Pumps
Gear Pumps
Rotary Lobe Pumps
Reciprocating Pump Types
Plunger Pumps
Diaphragm Pumps

#### **Plunger Pumps**

Plunger pumps have a cylinder with a reciprocating plunger. The suction and discharge valves are mounted in the head of cylinder. The suction stroke pulls the plunger back, suction valve opens and fluid is sucked into the cylinder. The



discharge stroke pushes the plunger forward closing suction valve and pushing fluid out of the discharge valve.

#### **Diaphragm Pumps**

Diaphragm pump types simply put use the plunger to pressurize either air or hydraulic fluid on one side which flexes the diaphragm which increases and decreases the volumetric area in the pumping chamber; non-return check valves ensure no back flow of the fluid.

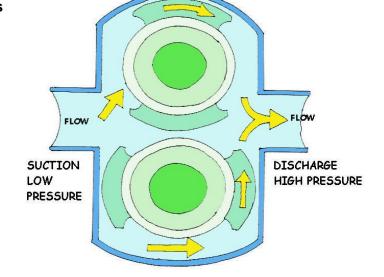
## **Positive Displacement Pumps**

A Positive Displacement Pump has an expanding cavity on the suction side of the pump and a decreasing cavity on the discharge side. Liquid is allowed to flow into the pump as the cavity on the suction side expands and the liquid is forced out of the discharge as the cavity collapses. This principle applies to all types of Positive Displacement Pumps whether the pump is a rotary lobe, gear within a gear, piston, diaphragm, screw, progressing cavity, etc.

A Positive Displacement Pump, unlike a Centrifugal Pump, will produce the same flow at a given RPM no matter what the discharge pressure is. A Positive Displacement Pump cannot be operated against a closed valve on the discharge side of the pump, i.e. it does not have a shut-off head like a Centrifugal Pump does. If a Positive Displacement Pump is allowed to operate against a closed discharge valve it will continue to produce flow which will increase the pressure in the discharge line until either the line bursts or the pump is severely damaged or both.

#### **Types of Positive Displacement Pumps**

. , p		
Single Rotor	Multiple Rotor	
Vane	Gear	
Piston	Lobe	
Flexible Member	Circumferential Piston	
Single Screw	Multiple Screw	



## There are many types of positive displacement pumps. We will look at:

- Plunger pumps
- Diaphragm pumps
- Progressing cavity pumps, and
- Screw pumps

#### Single Rotator

Component	Description
Vane	The vane(s) may be blades, buckets, rollers, or slippers that cooperate with a dam to draw fluid into and out of the pump chamber.
Piston	Fluid is drawn in and out of the pump chamber by a piston(s) reciprocating within a cylinder(s) and operating port valves.
Flexible Member	Pumping and sealing depends on the elasticity of a flexible member(s) that may be a tube, vane, or a liner.

9	Fluid is carried between rotor screw threads as they mesh with internal threads on the stator.

#### **Multiple Rotator**

Component	Description
Gear	Fluid is carried between gear teeth and is expelled by the meshing of the gears that cooperate to provide continuous sealing between the pump inlet and outlet.
Lobe	Fluid is carried between rotor lobes that cooperate to provide continuous sealing between the pump inlet and outlet.
Circumferential piston	Fluid is carried in spaces between piston surfaces not requiring contacts between rotor surfaces.
Multiple Screw	Fluid is carried between rotor screw threads as they mesh.

In the same way, the progressing cavity and the screw are two other types of mechanical action that can be used to provide movement of the liquid through the pump.

#### **Plunger Pump**

The plunger pump is a positive displacement pump that uses a plunger or piston to force liquid from the suction side to the discharge side of the pump. It is used for heavy sludge. The movement of the plunger or piston inside the pump creates pressure inside the pump, so you have to be careful that this kind of pump is never operated against any closed discharge valve.

All discharge valves must be open before the pump is started, to prevent any fast build-up of pressure that could damage the pump.

#### **Diaphragm Pumps**

In this type of pump, a diaphragm provides the mechanical action used to force liquid from the suction to the discharge side of the pump. The advantage the diaphragm has over the plunger is that the diaphragm pump does not come in contact with moving metal. This can be important when pumping abrasive or corrosive materials.

#### There are three main types of diaphragm pumps available:

- 1. Diaphragm sludge pump
- 2. Chemical metering or proportional pump
- 3. Air-powered double-diaphragm pump

## **Pump Specifications**

Pumps are commonly rated by horsepower, flow rate, outlet pressure in meters (or feet) of head, inlet suction in suction feet (or meters) of head. The head can be simplified as the number of feet or meters the pump can raise or lower a column of water at atmospheric pressure. From an initial design point of view, engineers often use a quantity termed the specific speed to identify the most suitable pump type for a particular combination of flow rate and head.

#### **Pump Construction Material**

The pump material can be Stainless steel (SS 316 or SS 304), cast iron etc. It depends on the application of the pump. In the water industry and for pharma applications SS 316 is normally used, as stainless steel gives better results at high temperatures.

#### **Pumping Power**

The power imparted into a fluid will increase the energy of the fluid per unit volume. Thus the power relationship is between the conversion of the mechanical energy of the pump mechanism and the fluid elements within the pump. In general, this is governed by a series of simultaneous differential equations, known as the Navier-Stokes equations. However a more simple equation relating only the different energies in the fluid, known as Bernoulli's equation can be used.

Hence the power, P, required by the pump:

$$P = \frac{\Delta PQ}{\eta}$$

where  $\Delta P$  is the change in total pressure between the inlet and outlet (in Pa), and Q, the fluid flowrate is given in m^3/s. The total pressure may have gravitational, static pressure and kinetic energy components; i.e. energy is distributed between change in the fluid's gravitational potential energy (going up or down hill), change in velocity, or change in static pressure.  $\eta$  is the pump efficiency, and may be given by the manufacturer's information, such as in the form of a pump curve, and is typically derived from either fluid dynamics simulation (i.e. solutions to the Navier-stokes for the particular pump geometry), or by testing. The efficiency of the pump will depend upon the pump's configuration and operating conditions (such as rotational speed, fluid density and viscosity etc.)

$$\Delta P = \frac{(v_2^2 - v_1^2)}{2} + \Delta zg + \frac{\Delta p_{\text{static}}}{\rho}$$

For a typical "pumping" configuration, the work is imparted

#### **Suction Lift Chart**

The vertical distance that a pump may be placed above the water level (and be able to draw water) is determined by pump design and limits dictated by altitude. The chart below shows the absolute limits. The closer the pump is to the water level, the easier and quicker it will be to prime.

Suction Lift at Various Elevations

Altitude:	Suction Lift In Feet
Sea Level	25.0
2,000 ft.	22.0
4,000 ft.	19.5
6,000 ft.	17.3
8,000 ft.	15.5
10,000 ft.	14.3

Centrifugal pumps are particularly vulnerable especially when pumping heated solution near the vapor pressure, whereas positive displacement pumps are less affected by cavitation, as they are better able to pump two-phase flow (the mixture of gas and liquid), however, the resultant flow rate of the pump will be diminished because of the gas volumetrically displacing a disproportion of liquid. Careful design is required to pump high temperature liquids with a centrifugal pump when the liquid is near its boiling point.

The violent collapse of the cavitation bubble creates a shock wave that can literally carve material from internal pump components (usually the leading edge of the impeller) and creates noise often described as "pumping gravel".

Additionally, the inevitable increase in vibration can cause other mechanical faults in the pump and associated equipment.

For a typical "pumping" configuration, the work is imparted on the fluid, and is thus positive. For the fluid imparting the work on the pump (i.e. a turbine), the work is negative power required to drive the pump is determined by dividing the output power by the pump efficiency. Furthermore, this definition encompasses pumps with no moving parts, such as a siphon.

When asked how a pump operates, most reply that it "sucks." While not a false statement, it's easy to see why so many pump operators still struggle with pump problems. Fluid flows from areas of high pressure to areas of low pressure. Pumps operate by creating low pressure at the inlet which allows the liquid to be pushed into the pump by atmospheric or head pressure (pressure due to the liquid's surface being above the centerline of the pump).

Consider placing a pump at the top of the mercury barometer above: Even with a perfect vacuum at the pump inlet, atmospheric pressure limits how high the pump can lift the liquid. With liquids lighter than mercury, this lift height can increase, but there's still a physical limit to pump operation based on pressure external to the pump. This limit is the key consideration for Net Positive Suction Head. Reference Centrifugal/Vertical NPSH Margin (ANSI/HI 9.6.1-1998), www.pumps.org, Hydraulic Institute, 1998.

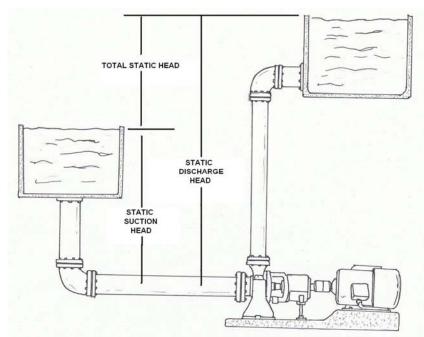
## **Pump Efficiency**

Pump efficiency is defined as the ratio of the power imparted on the fluid by the pump in relation to the power supplied to drive the pump. Its value is not fixed for a given pump; efficiency is a function of the discharge and therefore also operating head. For centrifugal pumps, the efficiency tends to increase with flow rate up to a point midway through the operating range (peak efficiency) and then declines as flow rates rise further. Pump performance data such as this is usually supplied by the manufacturer before pump selection. Pump efficiencies tend to decline over time due to wear (e.g. increasing clearances as impellers reduce in size).

When a system design includes a centrifugal pump, an important issue it its design is matching the head loss-flow characteristic with the pump so that it operates at or close to the point of its maximum efficiency. Pump efficiency is an important aspect and pumps should be regularly tested.

Thermodynamic pump testing is one method.

Depending on how the measurement is taken suction lift and head may also be referred to as static or dynamic. Static indicates the measurement does not take



into account the friction caused by water moving through the hose or pipes. Dynamic indicates that losses due to friction are factored into the performance. The following terms are usually used when referring to lift or head.

**Static Suction Lift** - The vertical distance from the water line to the centerline of the impeller.

**Static Discharge Head** - The vertical distance from the discharge outlet to the point of discharge or liquid level when discharging into the bottom of a water tank.

**Dynamic Suction Head** - The Static Suction Lift plus the friction in the suction line. Also referred to as a Total Suction Head.

**Dynamic Discharge Head** - The Static Discharge Head plus the friction in the discharge line. Also referred to as Total Discharge Head.

**Total Dynamic Head** - The Dynamic Suction Head plus the Dynamic Discharge Head. Also referred to as Total Head.

#### **Net Positive Suction Head (NPSH)**

NPSH can be defined as two parts:

NPSH Available (NPSHA): The absolute pressure at the suction port of the pump.

AND

NPSH Required (NPSHR): The minimum pressure required at the suction port of the pump to keep the pump from cavitating.

NPSHA is a function of your system and must be calculated, whereas NPSHR is a function of the pump and must be provided by the pump manufacturer. NPSHA MUST be greater than NPSHR for the pump system to operate without cavitating. Put another way, you must have more suction side pressure available than the pump requires.

#### **Specific Gravity**

The term specific gravity compares the density of some substance to the density of water. Since specific gravity is the ratio of those densities, the units of measure cancel themselves, and we end up with a dimensionless number that is the same for all systems of measure. Therefore, the specific gravity of water is 1— regardless of the measurement system. Specific gravity is important when sizing a centrifugal pump because it is indicative of the weight of the fluid, and its weight will have a direct effect on the amount of work performed by the pump. One of the beauties of the centrifugal pump is that the head (in feet) and flow it produces has nothing to do with the weight of the liquid. It is all about the velocity that is added by the impeller. The simplest way to prove the validity of this statement is to use the falling body equation:

v2 = 2gh

Where:

v = Velocity

g = The universal gravitational constant

h = height.

This equation will predict the final velocity some object will attain when falling from some height (ignoring friction of course). When rearranged, it takes the form of h = v2/2g and predicts the maximum height an object can attain based on its initial velocity. The final velocity attained by a falling object is actually the same as the initial velocity required for it to rise to the same height from which it fell. When this equation is applied to a centrifugal pump, h becomes the maximum theoretical head that it can produce. As the equation illustrates, that head depends upon the exit velocity of the liquid from the impeller vanes and the effect of gravity; it has absolutely nothing to do with the weight of the liquid.

The weight of the liquid does affect the amount of work done by a pump and, therefore, the HP required. A good way to understand the impact of liquid weight is to convert flow in GPM and head in feet into units of work. The equation below performs this conversion.

(gpm X 8.34 lb/gal X h) = w

Here the flow is multiplied by the weight of a gallon of water and then multiplied by the head in feet. The result is the work performed in ft-lb/minute. The equation shows us that the amount of work done by a centrifugal pump is directly proportional to the weight of the pumped liquid. If you divide w by 33,000, the result is the HP required at that particular point of flow and head. The downward sloping curve in the upper portion of the graph is the H/Q curve and the red, blue and green curves are the horsepower curves for three different liquids. The scale of the Y axis is both head and horsepower. The blue curve shows the HP required for water (SG=1). The red and green curves show the HP required to pump sugar syrup (SG=1.29) and gasoline (SG=0.71). If you analyze the three HP curves at each flow point, you will see that the increase or decrease is directly proportional to the SG of that particular liquid.

As long as the viscosity of a liquid is similar to that of water, its specific gravity will have no effect on pump performance. It will, however, directly affect the input power required to pump that particular liquid. The equation below can be used to compute the horsepower required to pump liquids of varying specific gravities (where BHP is brake horsepower, Q is flow in GPM, H is head in feet, SG is specific gravity and Eff is the hydraulic efficiency of the pump). It assumes a viscosity similar to that of water.

$$BHP = (Q x H x SG) / (3960 x Eff)$$

SG can also have an effect on the onset of cavitation in a particular pump. Heavier liquids cause a proportional increase in a pump's suction energy and those with a high suction energy level are more likely to experience cavitation damage. Next month we will review the effect of viscosity on centrifugal pump performance.

#### **Pump Testing**

To minimize energy use, and to ensure that pumps are correctly matched to the duty expected pumps, and pumping stations should be regularly tested. In water supply applications, which are usually fitted with centrifugal pumps, individual large pumps should be 70 - 80% efficient. They should be individually tested to ensure they are in the appropriate range, and replaced or prepared as appropriate. Pumping stations should also be tested collectively, because where pumps can run in combination to meet a given demand, it is often possible for very inefficient combination of pumps to occur. For example: it is perfectly possible to have a large and a small pump operating in parallel, with the smaller pump not delivering any water, but merely consuming energy. Pumps are readily tested by fitting a flow meter, measuring the pressure difference between inlet and outlet, and measuring the power consumed. Another method is thermodynamic pump testing where only the temperature rise and power consumed need be measured. Depending on how the measurement is taken suction lift and head may also be referred to as static or dynamic. Static indicates the measurement does not take into account the friction caused by water moving through the hose or pipes. Dynamic indicates that losses due to friction are factored into the performance. The following terms are usually used when referring to lift or head.

Static Suction Lift - The vertical distance from the water line to the centerline of the impeller.

**Static Discharge Head** - The vertical distance from the discharge outlet to the point of discharge or liquid level when discharging into the bottom of a water tank.

**Dynamic Suction Head** - The Static Suction Lift plus the friction in the suction line. Also referred to as a Total Suction Head.

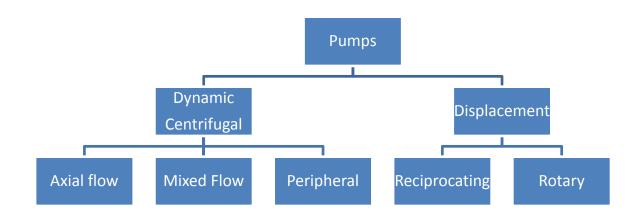
**Dynamic Discharge Head** - The Static Discharge Head plus the friction in the discharge line. Also referred to as Total Discharge Head.

**Total Dynamic Head** - The Dynamic Suction Head plus the Dynamic Discharge Head. Also referred to as Total Head.

## **Pump Categories**

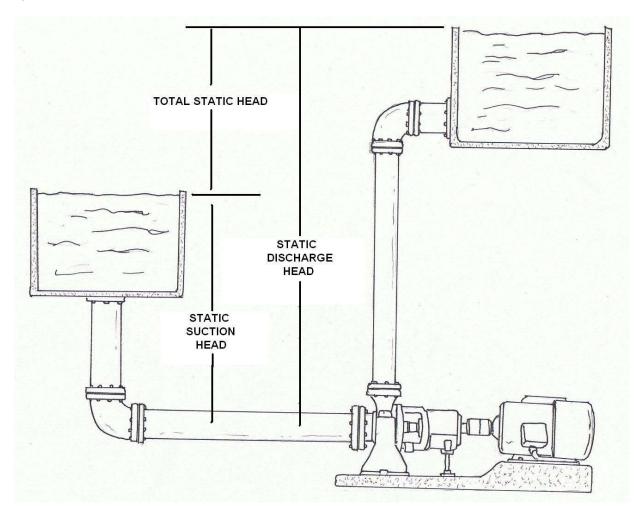
Let's cover the essentials first. The key to the whole operation is, of course, the *pump*. And regardless of what type it is (reciprocating piston, centrifugal, turbine or jet-ejector, for either shallow or deep well applications), its purpose is to move water and generate the delivery force we call pressure. Sometimes — with centrifugal pumps in particular — pressure is not referred to in pounds per square inch but rather as the equivalent in elevation, called head. No matter; head in feet divided by 2.31 equals pressure, so it's simple enough to establish a common figure.

Pumps may be classified on the basis of the application they serve. All pumps may be divided into two major categories: (1) dynamic, in which energy is continuously added to increase the fluid velocities within the machine, and (2) displacement, in which the energy is periodically added by application of force.



## **Understanding Your Pumping System Requirements**

Pumps transfer liquids from one point to another by converting mechanical energy from a rotating impeller into pressure energy (head). The pressure applied to the liquid forces the fluid to flow at the required rate and to overcome friction (or head) losses in piping, valves, fittings, and process equipment. The pumping system designer must consider fluid properties, determine end use requirements, and understand environmental conditions. Pumping applications include constant or variable flow rate requirements, serving single or networked loads, and consisting of open loops (non--return or liquid delivery) or closed loops (return systems).

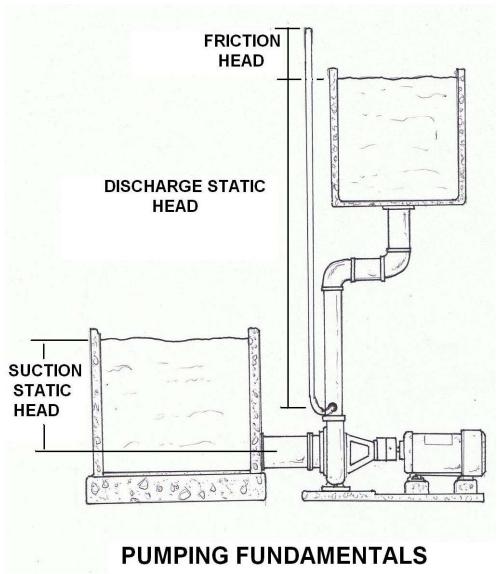


#### End Use Requirements—System Flow Rate and Head

The design pump capacity, or desired pump discharge in gallons per minute (gpm) is needed to accurately size the piping system, determine friction head losses, construct a system curve, and select a pump and drive motor. Process requirements may be met by providing a constant flow rate (with on/off control and storage used to satisfy variable flow rate requirements), or by using a throttling valve or variable speed drive to supply continuously variable flow rates.

The total system head has three components: static head, elevation (potential energy), and velocity (or dynamic) head. Static head is the pressure of the fluid in the system, and is the quantity measured by conventional pressure gauges. The height of the fluid level can have a substantial impact on system head. The dynamic head is the pressure required by the system to overcome head losses caused by flow rate resistance in pipes, valves, fittings, and mechanical equipment. Dynamic head losses are approximately proportional to the square of the fluid flow velocity, or flow rate. If the flow rate doubles, dynamic losses increase fourfold.

For many pumping systems, total system head requirements vary. For example, in wet well or reservoir applications, suction and static lift requirements may vary as the water surface elevations fluctuate. For return systems such as HVAC circulating water pumps, the values for the static and elevation heads equal zero. You also need to be aware of a pump's net positive suction head requirements. Centrifugal pumps require a certain amount of fluid pressure at the inlet to avoid cavitation. A rule of thumb is to ensure that the suction head available exceeds that required by the pump by at least 25% over the range of expected flow rates.



62

## **Understanding Pump Viscosity**

When to use a centrifugal or a Positive Displacement pump ("PD Pump") is not always a clear choice. To make a good choice between these pump types it is important to understand that these two types of pumps behave very differently.

First let's examine the density of the substance to be pumped. The density of a substance is defined as its mass per unit volume, but here on the earth's surface, we can substitute weight for mass. At 39-deg F (4-deg C), water has a density of 8.34 pounds per gallon or 62.43 pounds per cubic foot. In the metric system its density is one gram per cubic centimeter, or 1,000-kg per cubic meter.

#### **Specific Gravity**

The term specific gravity compares the density of some substance to the density of water. Since specific gravity is the ratio of those densities, the units of measure cancel themselves, and we end up with a dimensionless number that is the same for all systems of measure. Therefore, the specific gravity of water is 1— regardless of the measurement system. Specific gravity is important when sizing a centrifugal pump because it is indicative of the weight of the fluid and its weight will have a direct effect on the amount of work performed by the pump. One of the beauties of the centrifugal pump is that the head (in feet) and flow it produces has nothing to do with the weight of the liquid. It is all about the velocity that is added by the impeller.

The simplest way to prove the validity of this statement is to use the falling body equation:

v2 = 2gh

Where:

v = Velocity

g = The universal gravitational constant

h = height.

This equation will predict the final velocity some object will attain when falling from some height (ignoring friction of course). When rearranged, it takes the form of  $h = v^2/2g$  and predicts the maximum height an object can attain based on its initial velocity. The final velocity attained by a falling object is actually the same as the initial velocity required for it to rise to the same height from which it fell.

When this equation is applied to a centrifugal pump, h becomes the maximum theoretical head that it can produce. As the equation illustrates, that head depends upon the exit velocity of the liquid from the impeller vanes and the effect of gravity; it has absolutely nothing to do with the weight of the liquid.

The weight of the liquid does affect the amount of work done by a pump and, therefore, the HP required. A good way to understand the impact of liquid weight is to convert flow in GPM and head in feet into units of work. The equation below performs this conversion.

(gpm X 8.34 lb/gal X h) = w

Here the flow is multiplied by the weight of a gallon of water and then multiplied by the head in feet. The result is the work performed in ft-lb/minute. The equation shows us that the amount of work done by a centrifugal pump is directly proportional to the weight of the pumped liquid. If you divide w by 33,000, the result is the HP required at that particular point of flow and head. The downward sloping curve in the upper portion of the graph is the H/Q curve and the red, blue and green curves are the horsepower curves for three different liquids. The scale of the Y axis is both head and horsepower. The blue curve shows the HP required for water (SG=1). The red and green curves show the HP required to pump sugar syrup (SG=1.29) and gasoline (SG=0.71). If you analyze the three HP curves at each flow point, you will see that the increase or decrease is directly proportional to the SG of that particular liquid.

As long as the viscosity of a liquid is similar to that of water, its specific gravity will have no effect on pump performance. It will, however, directly affect the input power required to pump that particular liquid. The equation below can be used to compute the horsepower required to pump liquids of varying specific gravities (where BHP is brake horsepower, Q is flow in GPM, H is head in feet, SG is specific gravity and Eff is the hydraulic efficiency of the pump). It assumes a viscosity similar to that of water.

BHP = 
$$(Q x H x SG) / (3960 x Eff)$$

SG can also have an effect on the onset of cavitation in a particular pump. Heavier liquids cause a proportional increase in a pump's suction energy and those with a high suction energy level are more likely to experience cavitation damage.

#### **Understanding Pump Friction Loss**

To optimize a fluid piping system, it is important to have a clear understanding of how the various system items interact. Regardless of the methods used to gain a thorough picture of piping system operations, a variety of calculations must be performed. Among the formulas are the Bernoulli equation to calculate the pressure in the system, and the Darcy-Weisbach equation, which is commonly used to calculate head loss in a pipe run. The Bernoulli Equation is a way of expressing the total energy of fluid as it flows through a pipe run

#### The Piping System

A piping system is configured of individual pipe runs connected in series and parallel combinations with pumps, control valves, flowmeters and components. It is essential to recognize how these unique elements interact and work together as a system. There are both graphical and analytical methods that provide an understanding of how the various items interact as a total system. The head loss is calculated using the graphical method for a variety of flow rates for each pipe run. The results can be read off the graph after the information is plotted. Using the analytical method, the results are calculated directly, which eliminates the need for further graphics.

In fluid dynamics, the Darcy–Weisbach equation is a phenomenological equation, which relates the head loss — or pressure loss — due to friction along a given length of pipe to the average velocity of the fluid flow. The equation is named after Henry Darcy and Julius Weisbach.

The Darcy–Weisbach equation contains a dimensionless friction factor, known as the Darcy friction factor. This is also called the Darcy–Weisbach friction factor or Moody friction factor.

The Darcy friction factor is four times the Fanning friction factor, with which it should not be confused.

#### **Head Loss Formula**

Head loss can be calculated with

$$h_f = f_D \cdot \frac{L}{D} \cdot \frac{V^2}{2g}$$

#### where

- hf is the head loss due to friction (SI units: m);
- L is the length of the pipe (m);
- D is the hydraulic diameter of the pipe (for a pipe of circular section, this equals the internal diameter of the pipe) (m);
- *V* is the average velocity of the fluid flow, equal to the volumetric flow rate per unit cross-sectional wetted area (m/s);
- g is the local acceleration due to gravity (m/s<sup>2</sup>);
- *fD* is a dimensionless coefficient called the Darcy friction factor. It can be found from a Moody diagram or more precisely by solving the Colebrook equation. Do not confuse this with the Fanning Friction factor, f.

However the establishment of the friction factors was still an unresolved issue which needed further work.

## Darcy-Weisbach Formula Flow of fluid through a pipe

The flow of liquid through a pipe is resisted by viscous shear stresses within the liquid and the turbulence that occurs along the internal walls of the pipe, created by the roughness of the pipe material. This resistance is usually known as pipe friction and is measured is feet or meters head of the fluid, thus the term head loss is also used to express the resistance to flow.

Many factors affect the head loss in pipes, the viscosity of the fluid being handled, the size of the pipes, the roughness of the internal surface of the pipes, the changes in elevations within the system and the length of travel of the fluid. The resistance through various valves and fittings will also contribute to the overall head loss. A method to model the resistances for valves and fittings is described elsewhere.

In a well-designed system the resistance through valves and fittings will be of minor significance to the overall head loss, many designers choose to ignore the head loss for valves and fittings at least in the initial stages of a design.

Much research has been carried out over many years and various formulas to calculate head loss have been developed based on experimental data. Among these is the Chézy formula which dealt with water flow in open channels. Using the concept of 'wetted perimeter' and the internal diameter of a pipe the Chézy formula could be adapted to estimate the head loss in a pipe, although the constant 'C' had to be determined experimentally.

## The Darcy-Weisbach Equation

Weisbach first proposed the equation we now know as the Darcy-Weisbach formula or Darcy-Weisbach equation:

```
hf = f (L/D) x (v2/2g)

where:
hf = head loss (m)
f = friction factor
L = length of pipe work (m)
d = inner diameter of pipe work (m)
v = velocity of fluid (m/s)
g = acceleration due to gravity (m/s²)
or:
hf = head loss (ft)
f = friction factor
L = length of pipe work (ft)
d = inner diameter of pipe work (ft)
v = velocity of fluid (ft/s)
g = acceleration due to gravity (ft/s²)
```

#### The Moody Chart

In 1944 LF Moody plotted the data from the Colebrook equation and this chart which is now known as 'The Moody Chart' or sometimes the Friction Factor Chart, enables a user to plot the Reynolds number and the Relative Roughness of the pipe and to establish a reasonably accurate value of the friction factor for turbulent flow conditions. The Moody Chart encouraged the use of the Darcy-Weisbach friction factor and this quickly became the method of choice for hydraulic engineers. Many forms of head loss calculator were developed to assist with the calculations, amongst these a round slide rule offered calculations for flow in pipes on one side and flow in open channels on the reverse side.

The development of the personnel computer from the 1980's onwards reduced the time needed to perform the friction factor and head loss calculations, which in turn has widened the use of the Darcy-Weisbach formula to the point that all other formula are now largely unused.

#### **Pipe Runs**

A piping system is composed primarily of individual pipe runs connecting all system elements together. Because a pipe run is the basic building block of a piping system, examine the losses associated with individual pipe runs when connected in series and parallel configurations. The pipe head loss in a single pipe run can easily be calculated using the Darcy-Weisbach equation. Performing the head loss calculation for a range of expected flow rates helps to develop a curve showing the pipe run head loss for any flow rate within a defined range. The Bernoulli equation allows for calculation of pressure anywhere in the pipe run.

Multiple pipe runs connected end-to-end form a "series" of individual pipe runs. The flow rate through each pipe run in a series configuration is identical. As a result, the head loss for a series of pipe runs is simply the sum of the head losses for each of the individual pipe runs. When multiple pipe runs are placed in parallel, determining the head loss through them becomes more difficult because the flow is distributed through the various pipe runs. The head loss across the parallel paths can be calculated after determining the flow rate in each pipe run and the head loss across each pipe run in a parallel configuration.

A component-including filters, strainers, towers, columns and heat exchangers-is an item placed in a piping system that has a head loss for a given flow rate. The function describing the head loss across the component versus the flow rate is similar to that of the head loss through valves and fittings.

#### **Pump Curves**

A pump curve describes the operation of a pump for a range of flows at a defined speed. Many design elements affect the shape of the pump curve, and most of these cannot be changed by the user. As a result, centrifugal pumps are usually selected from the manufacturer's available designs to match the system requirements. An engineered or assembled-to-order pump can be specified, and the manufacturer can often provide a pump performance characteristic well suited to the specific application depending on the type of pump. Characteristics that can be changed by users to change the pump (performance) curve are the impeller diameter and the rotational speed. The pump curve change will cause the pump curve to intersect the system curve at a different rate of flow. When selected properly, the pump will operate near its best efficiency point (BEP). This relationship of speed change or diameter change is often referred to as the pump affinity rules.

Control valves are inserted into a piping system to regulate the rate of flow or pressure in the piping system. Remember, control valves control the flow by providing a variable hydraulic resistance between the upstream and downstream components in the system. In other words, the control valve does not change the basic shape of the system curve; it provides additional resistance to the system to enable the valve to control the flow.

#### **System Curves**

Pump and system curves can illustrate the basic interaction in the total system. Pump and system curves consist of a system curve showing the head required to pass a given flow rate through the piping system, and a pump curve superimposed on the system curve. The point where the system curve and the pump curve intersect is the balanced flow rate through the pump. In the absence of control valves, the system will operate at the intersection of the pump and system curves.

## **Key Pump Words**

**NPSH:** Net positive suction head - related to how much suction lift a pump can achieve by creating a partial vacuum. Atmospheric pressure then pushes liquid into the pump. A method of calculating if the pump will work or not.

**S.G.:** Specific gravity. The weight of liquid in comparison to water at approx. 20 degrees C (SG = 1).

**Specific Speed:** A number which is the function of pump flow, head, efficiency etc. Not used in day to day pump selection, but very useful, as pumps with similar specific speed will have similar shaped curves, similar efficiency / NPSH / solids handling characteristics.

**Vapor Pressure:** If the vapor pressure of a liquid is greater than the surrounding air pressure, the liquid will boil.

**Viscosity:** A measure of a liquid's resistance to flow. i.e.: how thick it is. The viscosity determines the type of pump used, the speed it can run at, and with gear pumps, the internal clearances required.

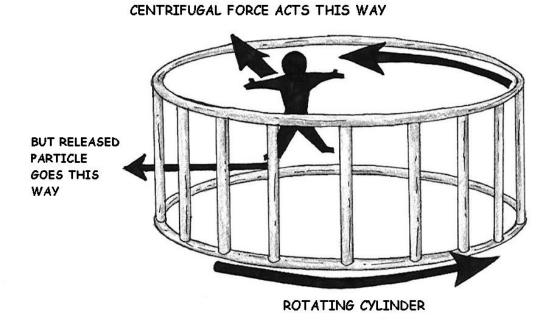
**Friction Loss:** The amount of pressure / head required to 'force' liquid through pipe and fittings.



## **Understanding the Basic Water Pump**

The water pump commonly found in our systems is centrifugal pumps. These pumps work by spinning water around in a circle inside a cylindrical pump housing. The pump makes the water spin by pushing it with an impeller. The blades of this impeller project outward from an axle like the arms of a turnstile and, as the impeller spins, the water spins with it. As the water spins, the pressure near the outer edge of the pump housing becomes much higher than near the center of the impeller.

There are many ways to understand this rise in pressure, and here are two:



First, you can view the water between the impeller blades as an object traveling in a circle. Objects do not naturally travel in a circle--they need an inward force to cause them to accelerate inward as they spin.

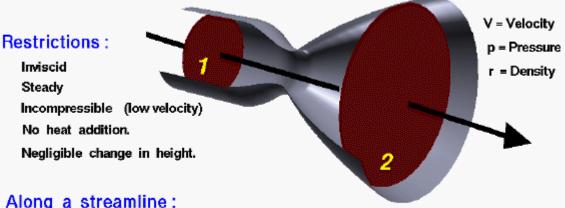
Without such an inward force, an object will travel in a straight line and will not complete the circle. In a centrifugal pump, that inward force is provided by high-pressure water near the outer edge of the pump housing. The water at the edge of the pump pushes inward on the water between the impeller blades and makes it possible for that water to travel in a circle. The water pressure at the edge of the turning impeller rises until it is able to keep water circling with the impeller blades.

You can also view the water as an incompressible fluid, one that obeys Bernoulli's equation in the appropriate contexts. As water drifts outward between the impeller blades of the pump, it must move faster and faster because its circular path is getting larger and larger. The impeller blades cause the water to move faster and faster. By the time the water has reached the outer edge of the impeller, it is moving quite fast. However, when the water leaves the impeller and arrives at the outer edge of the cylindrical pump housing, it slows down.



# Bernoulli's Equation

Glenn Research Center



## Along a streamline:

static pressure + dynamic pressure = total pressure
$$p_{s} + \frac{rV^{2}}{2} = p_{t}$$

$$\left(p_{s} + \frac{rV^{2}}{2}\right)_{1} = \left(p_{s} + \frac{rV^{2}}{2}\right)_{2}$$

Here is where Bernoulli's equation figures in. As the water slows down and its kinetic energy decreases, that water's pressure potential energy increases (to conserve energy). Thus, the slowing is accompanied by a pressure rise. That is why the water pressure at the outer edge of the pump housing is higher than the water pressure near the center of the impeller. When water is actively flowing through the pump, arriving through a hole near the center of the impeller and leaving through a hole near the outer edge of the pump housing, the pressure rise between center and edge of the pump is not as large.

## **Types of Water Pumps**

The most common type of water pumps used for municipal and domestic water supplies are *variable displacement* pumps. A variable displacement pump will produce at different rates relative to the amount of pressure or lift the pump is working against. *Centrifugal* pumps are variable displacement pumps that are by far used the most. The water production well industry almost exclusively uses *Turbine* pumps, which are a type of centrifugal pump.

The turbine pump utilizes *impellers* enclosed in single or multiple *bowls or stages* to lift water by *centrifugal force*. The impellers may be of either a *semi-open or closed type*. Impellers are rotated by the *pump motor*, which provides the horsepower needed to overcome the pumping head. A more thorough discussion of how these and other pumps work is presented later in this section. The size and number of stages, horsepower of the motor and pumping head are the key components relating to the pump's lifting capacity.

Vertical turbine pumps are commonly used in groundwater wells. These pumps are driven by a shaft rotated by a motor on the surface. The shaft turns the impellers within the pump housing while the water moves up the column.

This type of pumping system is also called a *line-shaft turbine*. The rotating shaft in a line shaft turbine is actually housed within the column pipe that delivers the water to the surface. The size of the column, impeller, and bowls are selected based on the desired pumping rate and lift requirements.

Column pipe sections can be threaded or coupled together while the drive shaft is coupled and suspended within the column by *spider bearings*. The spider bearings provide both a seal at the column pipe joints and keep the shaft aligned within the column. The water passing through the column pipe serves as the lubricant for the bearings. Some vertical turbines are lubricated by oil rather than water. These pumps are essentially the same as water lubricated units; only the drive shaft is enclosed within an *oil tube*.

Food grade oil is supplied to the tube through a gravity feed system during operation. The oil tube is suspended within the column by *spider flanges*, while the line shaft is supported within the oil tube by *brass or redwood bearings*. A continuous supply of oil lubricates the drive shaft as it proceeds downward through the oil tube.

A small hole located at the top of the pump bow unit allows excess oil to enter the well. This results in the formation of an oil film on the water surface within oil-lubricated wells. Careful operation of oil lubricated turbines is needed to ensure that the pumping levels do not drop enough to allow oil to enter the pump. Both water and oil lubricated turbine pump units can be driven by electric or fuel powered motors. Most installations use an electric motor that is connected to the drive shaft by a keyway and nut. However, where electricity is not readily available, fuel powered engines may be connected to the drive shaft by a right angle drive gear. Also, both oil and water lubricated systems will have a strainer attached to the intake to prevent sediment from entering the pump.

When the line shaft turbine is turned off, water will flow back down the column, turning the impellers in a reverse direction. A pump and shaft can easily be broken if the motor were to turn on during this process. This is why a *time delay* or *ratchet* assembly is often installed on these motors to either prevent the motor from turning on before reverse rotation stops or simply not allow it to reverse at all.

#### There are three main types of diaphragm pumps:

In the first type, the diaphragm is sealed with one side in the fluid to be pumped, and the other in air or hydraulic fluid. The diaphragm is flexed, causing the volume of the pump chamber to increase and decrease. A pair of non-return check valves prevents reverse flow of the fluid.

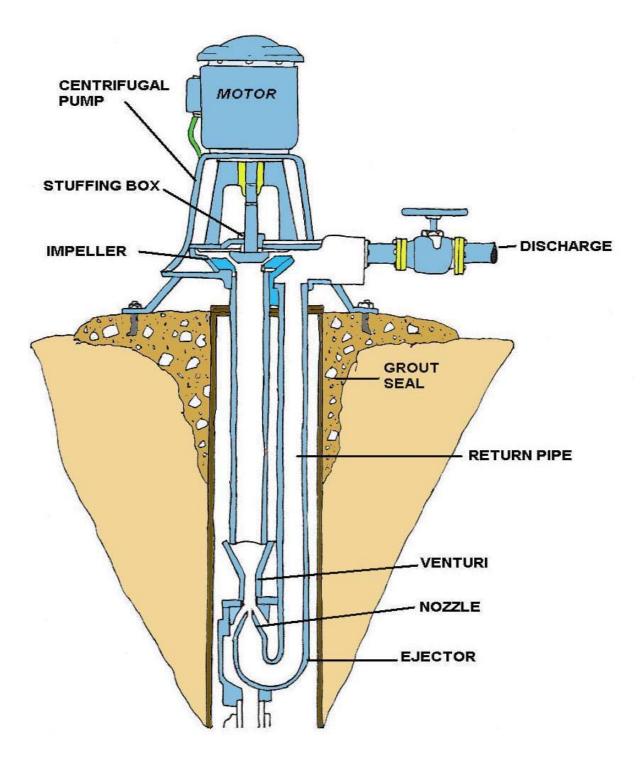
As described above, the second type of diaphragm pump works with volumetric positive displacement, but differs in that the prime mover of the diaphragm is neither oil nor air; but is electro-mechanical, working through a crank or geared motor drive. This method flexes the diaphragm through simple mechanical action, and one side of the diaphragm is open to air. The third type of diaphragm pump has one or more unsealed diaphragms with the fluid to be pumped on both sides. The diaphragm(s) again are flexed, causing the volume to change.

When the volume of a chamber of either type of pump is increased (the diaphragm moving up), the pressure decreases, and fluid is drawn into the chamber. When the chamber pressure later increases from decreased volume (the diaphragm moving down), the fluid previously drawn in is forced out. Finally, the diaphragm moving up once again draws fluid into the chamber, completing the cycle. This action is similar to that of the cylinder in an internal combustion engine.

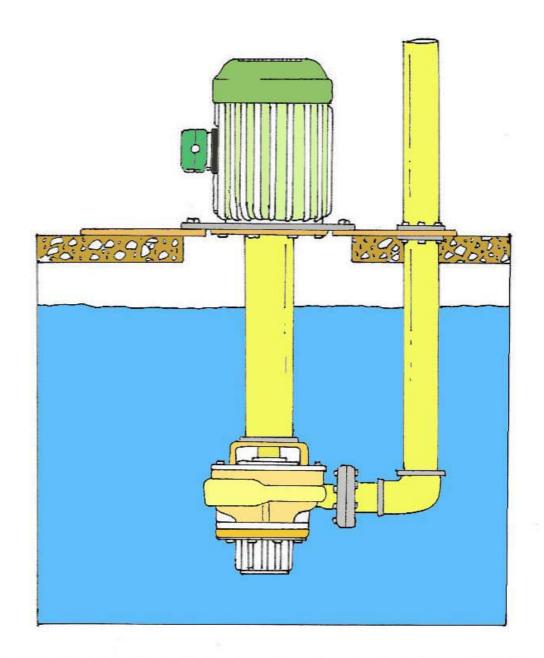
#### Cavitation

Cavitation is defined as the phenomenon of formation of vapor bubbles of a flowing liquid in a region where the pressure of the liquid falls below its vapor pressure. Cavitation is usually divided into two classes of behavior: inertial (or transient) cavitation and non-inertial cavitation. Inertial cavitation is the process where a void or bubble in a liquid rapidly collapses, producing a shock wave. Such cavitation often occurs in pumps, propellers, impellers, and in the vascular tissues of plants. Non-inertial cavitation is the process in which a bubble in a fluid is forced to oscillate in size or shape due to some form of energy input, such as an acoustic field. Such cavitation is often employed in ultrasonic cleaning baths and can also be observed in pumps, propellers etc.

Cavitation is, in many cases, an undesirable occurrence. In devices such as propellers and pumps, cavitation causes a great deal of noise, damage to components, vibrations, and a loss of efficiency. When the cavitation bubbles collapse, they force liquid energy into very small volumes, thereby creating spots of high temperature and emitting shock waves, the latter of which are a source of noise. The noise created by cavitation is a particular problem for military submarines, as it increases the chances of being detected by passive sonar. Although the collapse of a cavity is a relatively low-energy event, highly localized collapses can erode metals, such as steel, over time. The pitting caused by the collapse of cavities produces great wear on components and can dramatically shorten a propeller's or pump's lifetime.

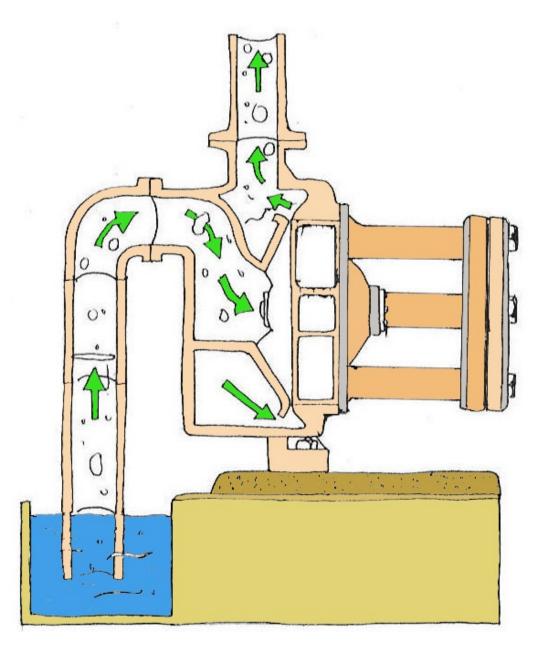


**Vertical Turbine** 



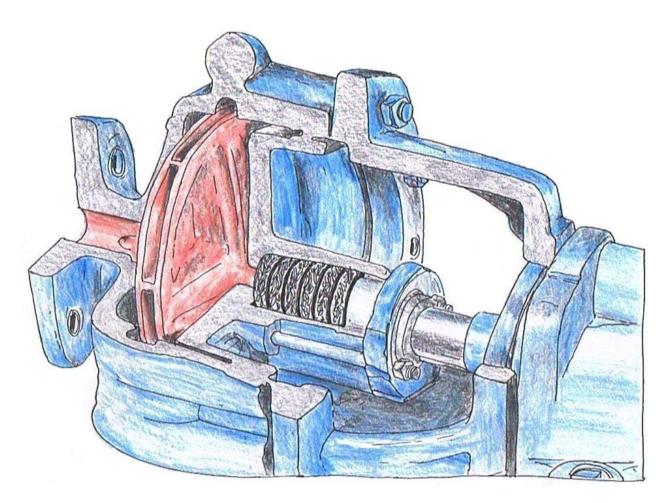
# **INSTALLATION OF A VERTICAL PUMP**

## **PUMP PRIMING**



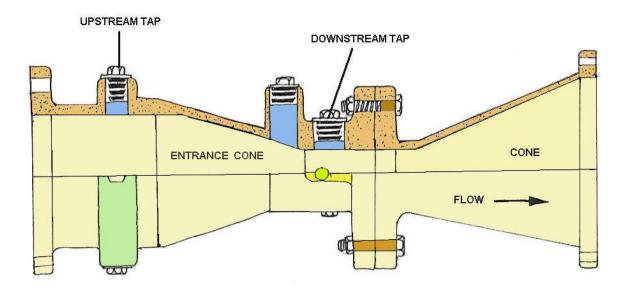
## **Self-priming Pump**

A pump that does not require priming or initial filling with liquid. The pump casing carries a reserve of water that helps create a vacuum that will lift the fluid from a low source.



## **Stuffing Box**

The joint that seals the fluid in the pump stopping it from coming out between the casing and the pump shaft. The function of packing is to control leakage and not to eliminate it completely. The packing must be lubricated, and a flow from 40 to 60 drops per minute out of the stuffing box must be maintained for proper lubrication. This makes this type of seal unfit for situations where leakage is unacceptable but they are very common in large primary sector industries such a mining and pulp and paper.



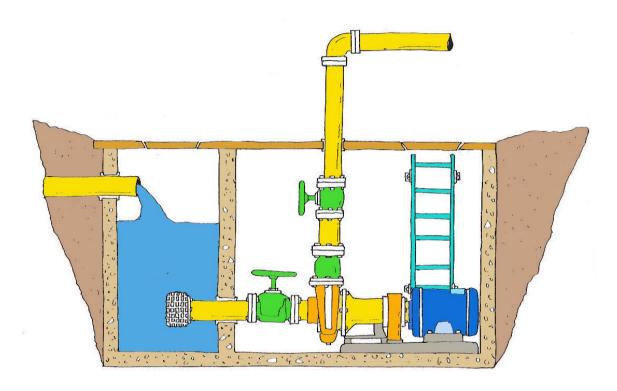
## **VENTURI TUBE**

It is not easy to understand why low pressure occurs in the small diameter area of the venturi. I have come up with this explanation that seems to help.

It is clear that all the flow must pass from the larger section to the smaller section. Or in other words, the flow rate will remain the same in the large and small portions of the tube. The flow rate is the same, but the velocity changes. The velocity is greater in the small portion of the tube. There is a relationship between the pressure energy and the velocity energy; if velocity increases the pressure energy must decrease. This is the principle of conservation of energy at work which is also Bernoulli's law. In the large part of the pipe the pressure is high and velocity is low, in the small part, pressure is low and velocity high.

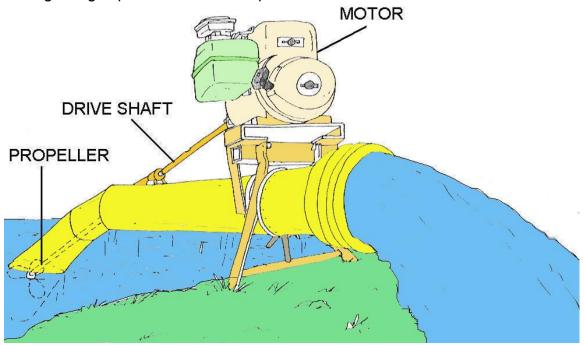
#### Venturi (Bernoulli's law):

A venturi is a pipe that has a gradual restriction that opens up into a gradual enlargement. The area of the restriction will have a lower pressure than the enlarged area ahead of it. If the difference in diameters is large you can even produce a very high vacuum (-28 feet of water).

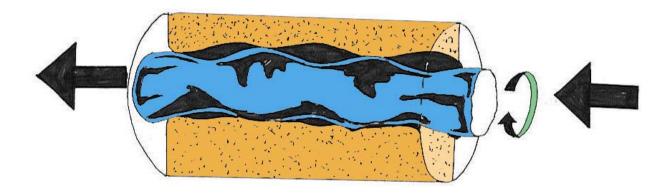


## **Viscous Drag Pump**

A pump whose impeller has no vanes but relies on fluid contact with a flat rotating plate turning at high speed to move the liquid.



## **Progressing Cavity Pump**



## PROGRESSIVE CAVITY PUMP

In this type of pump, components referred to as a rotor and an elastic stator provide the mechanical action used to force liquid from the suction side to the discharge side of the pump. As the rotor turns within the stator, cavities are formed which progress from the suction to the discharge end of the pump, conveying the pumped material. The continuous seal between the rotor and the stator helices keeps the fluid moving steadily at a fixed flow rate proportional to the pump's rotational speed. Progressing cavity pumps are used to pump material very high in solids content. The progressive cavity pump must never be run dry, because the friction between the rotor and stator will quickly damage the pump.

#### More on the Progressive Cavity Pump

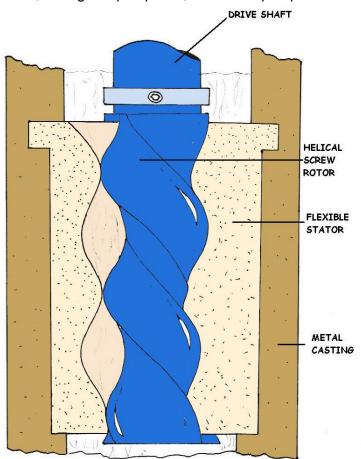
A progressive cavity pump is also known as a progressing cavity pump, eccentric screw pump, or even just cavity pump, and as is common in engineering generally, these pumps can often be referred to by using a generalized trademark. Hence, names can vary from industry to industry and even regionally; examples include: Mono pump, Moyno pump, Mohno pump, and Nemo pump.

This type of pump transfers fluid by means of the progress, through the pump, of a sequence of small, fixed shape, discrete cavities, as its rotor is turned. This leads to the volumetric flow rate being proportional to the rotation rate (bi-directionally) and to low levels of shearing being applied to the pumped fluid. Hence, these pumps have application in fluid metering and pumping of viscous or shear sensitive materials. It should be noted that the cavities taper down toward their ends and overlap with their neighbors, so that, in general, no flow pulsing is caused by the arrival of cavities at the outlet, other than that caused by compression of the fluid or pump components. The principle of this pumping technique is frequently misunderstood; often it is believed to occur due to a dynamic effect caused by drag, or friction against the moving teeth of the screw rotor. However, in reality it is due to sealed cavities, like a piston pump, and so has similar operational characteristics, such as being able to pump at extremely low rates, even to high pressure, revealing the effect to be purely positive displacement.

The mechanical layout that causes the cavities to, uniquely, be of fixed dimensions as they move through the pump, is hard to visualize (it's essentially 3D nature renders diagrams quite ineffective for explanation), but it is accomplished by the preservation in shape of the gap formed between a helical shaft and a two start, twice the wavelength and double the diameter, helical hole, as the shaft is "rolled" around the inside surface of the hole. The motion of the rotor being the same as the smaller gears of a planetary gears system. This form of motion gives rise to the curves called Hypocycloids.

In order to produce a seal between cavities, the rotor requires a circular cross-section and the stator an oval one. The rotor so takes a form similar to a corkscrew, and this, combined with the off-center rotary motion, leads to the name; *Eccentric screw pump*.

Different rotor shapes and rotor/stator pitch ratios exist, but are specialized in that they don't generally allow complete sealing, so reducing low speed pressure and flow rate linearity, but improving actual flow rates, for a given pump size, and/or the pump's solids handling ability.



PROGRESSIVE CAVITY PUMP

At a high enough pressure the sliding seals between cavities will leak some fluid rather than pumping it, so when pumping against high pressures a longer pump with more cavities is more effective, since each seal has only to deal with the pressure difference between adjacent cavities. Pumps with between two and a dozen or so cavities exist.

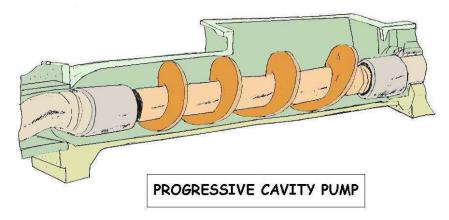
In operation, progressive cavity pumps are fundamentally fixed flow rate pumps, like piston pumps and peristaltic pumps. This type of pump needs a fundamentally different understanding to the types of pumps to which people are more commonly first introduced, namely ones that can be thought of as generating a pressure. This can lead to the mistaken assumption that all pumps can have their flow rates adjusted by using a valve attached to their outlet, but with this type of pump this assumption is a problem, since such a valve will have practically no effect on the flow rate and completely closing it will involve very high, probably damaging, pressures being generated. In order to prevent this, pumps are often fitted with cut-off pressure switches, burst disks (deliberately weak and easily replaced points), or a bypass pipe that allows a variable amount of a fluid to return to the inlet. With a bypass fitted, a fixed flow rate pump is effectively converted to a fixed pressure one.

At the points where the rotor touches the stator, the surfaces are generally traveling transversely, so small areas of sliding contact occur, these areas need to be lubricated by the fluid being pumped (Hydrodynamic lubrication), this can mean that more torque is required for starting, and if allowed to operate without fluid, called 'run dry', rapid deterioration of the stator can result.

While progressive cavity pumps offer long life and reliable service transporting thick or lumpy fluids, abrasive fluids will significantly shorten the life of the stator. However, slurries (particulates in a medium) can be pumped reliably, as long as the medium is viscous enough to maintain a lubrication layer around the particles and so provide protection to the stator.

Specific designs involve the rotor of the pump being made of a steel, coated in a smooth hard surface, normally chromium, with the body (the stator) made of a molded elastomer inside a metal tube body. The Elastomer core of the stator forms the required complex cavities. The rotor is held against the inside surface of the stator by angled link arms, bearings (which have to be within the fluid) allowing it to roll around the inner surface (un-driven). Elastomer is used for the stator to simplify the creation of the complex internal shape, created by means of casting, and also improves the quality and longevity of the seals by progressively swelling due to absorption of water and/or other common constituents of pumped fluids. Elastomer/pumped fluid compatibility will thus need to be taken into account.

Two common designs of stator are the "Equal-walled" and the "Unequal walled". The latter, having greater elastomer wall thickness at the peaks, allows larger-sized solids to pass through because of its increased ability to distort under pressure.



## **Peristaltic Pumps**

A peristaltic pump is a type of positive displacement pump used for pumping a variety of fluids. The fluid is contained within a flexible tube fitted inside a circular pump casing (though linear peristaltic pumps have been made). A rotor with a number of "rollers", "shoes" or "wipers" attached to the external circumference compresses the flexible tube. As the rotor turns, the part of the tube under compression closes (or "occludes") thus forcing the fluid to be pumped to move through the tube. Additionally, as the tube opens to its natural state after the passing of the cam ("restitution") fluid flow is induced to the pump. This process is called peristalsis and is used in many biological systems such as the gastrointestinal tract.

#### **Priming a Pump**

Liquid and slurry pumps can lose prime and this will require the pump to be primed by adding liquid to the pump and inlet pipes to get the pump started. Loss of "prime" is usually due to ingestion of air into the pump. The clearances and displacement ratios in pumps used for liquids and other more viscous fluids cannot displace the air due to its lower density.

#### **Plunger Pumps**

Plunger pumps are reciprocating positive displacement pumps. They consist of a cylinder with a reciprocating plunger in them. The suction and discharge valves are mounted in the head of the cylinder. In the suction stroke the plunger retracts and the suction valves open causing suction of fluid into the cylinder. In the forward stroke the plunger pushes the liquid out of the discharge valve.

### **Efficiency and Common Problems**

With only one cylinder in plunger pumps, the fluid flow varies between maximum flow when the plunger moves through the middle positions and zero flow when the plunger is at the end positions. A lot of energy is wasted when the fluid is accelerated in the piping system. Vibration and "water hammer" may be a serious problem. In general the problems are compensated for by using two or more cylinders not working in phase with each other.

#### **Priming a Pump**

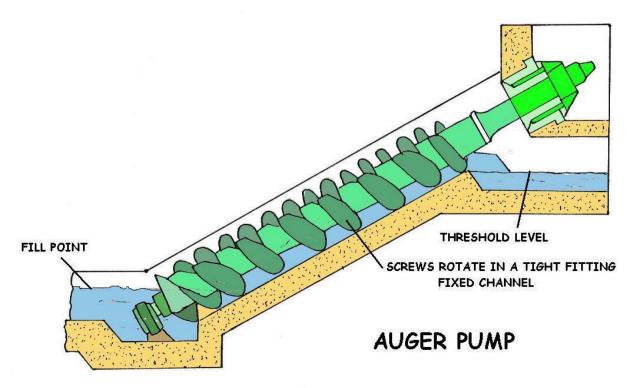
Liquid and slurry pumps can lose prime and this will require the pump to be primed by adding liquid to the pump and inlet pipes to get the pump started. Loss of "prime" is usually due to ingestion of air into the pump. The clearances and displacement ratios in pumps used for liquids and other more viscous fluids cannot displace the air due to its lower density.

#### **Compressed-Air-Powered Double-Diaphragm Pumps**

One modern application of positive displacement diaphragm pumps is compressed-air-powered double-diaphragm pumps. Run on compressed air these pumps are intrinsically safe by design, although all manufacturers offer ATEX certified models to comply with industry regulation. Commonly seen in all areas of industry from shipping to processing, Wilden Pumps, Graco, SandPiper or ARO are generally the larger of the brands. They are relatively inexpensive and can be used for almost any duty from pumping water out of bunds, to pumping hydrochloric acid from secure storage (dependent on how the pump is manufactured – elastomers / body construction). Lift is normally limited to roughly 6m although heads can reach almost 200 Psi.

## **Screw or Auger Pump**

The Archimedes' screw, Archimedean screw, or screwpump is a machine historically used for transferring water from a low-lying body of water into irrigation ditches. It was one of several inventions and discoveries traditionally attributed to Archimedes in the 3rd century BC.



The machine consists of a screw inside a hollow pipe. Some attribute its invention to Archimedes in the 3rd century BC, while others attribute it to Nebuchadnezzar II in the 7th century BC. A screw can be thought of as an inclined plane (another simple machine) wrapped around a cylinder.

The screw is turned (usually by a windmill or by manual labor). As the bottom end of the tube turns, it scoops up a volume of water. This amount of water will slide up in the spiral tube as the shaft is turned, until it finally pours out from the top of the tube and feeds the irrigation system.

The contact surface between the screw and the pipe does not need to be perfectly water-tight because of the relatively large amount of water being scooped at each turn with respect to the angular speed of the screw. Also, water leaking from the top section of the screw leaks into the previous one and so on. So a sort of equilibrium is achieved while using the machine, thus preventing a decrease in efficiency.

The "screw" does not necessarily need to turn inside the casing, but can be allowed to turn with it in one piece. A screw could be sealed with pitch or some other adhesive to its casing, or, cast as a single piece in bronze, as some researchers have postulated as being the devices used to irrigate Nebuchadnezzar II's Hanging Gardens of Babylon. Depictions of Greek and Roman water screws show the screws being powered by a human treading on the outer casing to turn

the entire apparatus as one piece, which would require that the casing be rigidly attached to the screw.

In this type of pump, a large screw provides the mechanical action to move the liquid from the suction side to the discharge side of the pump. Here are some typical characteristics of screw pumps:

- Most screw pumps rotate in the 30 to 60 rpm range, although some screw pumps are faster.
- ♦ The slope of the screw is normally either 30° or 38°.

The maximum lift for the larger diameter pumps is about 30 feet. The smaller diameter pumps have lower lift capabilities.

## **Reciprocating Pumps**

## Typical reciprocating pumps are

- plunger pumps
- diaphragm pumps

A plunger pump consists of a cylinder with a reciprocating plunger in it. The suction and discharge valves are mounted in the head of the cylinder. In the suction stroke the plunger retracts and the suction valves open causing suction of fluid into the cylinder. In the forward stroke the plunger pushes the liquid out of the discharge valve.

With only one cylinder the fluid flow varies between maximum flow when the plunger moves through the middle positions and zero flow when the plunger is at the end positions. A lot of energy is wasted when the fluid is accelerated in the piping system. Vibration and "water hammer" may be a serious problem. In general the problems are compensated for by using two or more cylinders not working in phase with each other.

In diaphragm pumps, the plunger pressurizes hydraulic oil which is used to flex a diaphragm in the pumping cylinder. Diaphragm valves are used to pump hazardous and toxic fluids. An example of the piston displacement pump is the common hand soap pump.

#### **Gear Pump**

This uses two meshed gears rotating in a closely fitted casing. Fluid is pumped around the outer periphery by being trapped in the tooth spaces. It does not travel back on the meshed part, since the teeth mesh closely in the center. Widely used on car engine oil pumps. It is also used in various hydraulic power packs.

#### **Progressing Cavity Pump**

Widely used for pumping difficult materials such as sewage sludge contaminated with large particles, this pump consists of a helical shaped rotor, about ten times as long as its width. This can be visualized as a central core of diameter x, with typically a curved spiral wound around of thickness half x, although of course in reality it is made from one casting. This shaft fits inside a heavy duty rubber sleeve, of wall thickness typically x also. As the shaft rotates, fluid is gradually forced up the rubber sleeve. Such pumps can develop very high pressure at quite low volumes.

#### Diaphragm Pumps

A diaphragm pump is a positive displacement pump that uses a combination of the reciprocating action of a rubber, thermoplastic or Teflon diaphragm and suitable non-return check valves to pump a fluid. Sometimes this type of pump is also called a membrane pump. Diaphragm Pumps are used extensively in many industries and can handle a very wide variety of liquids. Diaphragm Pumps are in the category of "positive displacement" pumps because their flow rates do not vary much with the discharge "head" (or pressure) the pump is working against (for a given pump speed).

Diaphragm Pumps can transfer liquids with low, medium or high viscosities and also liquids with a large solids content. They can also handle many aggressive chemicals such as acids because they can be constructed with a wide variety of body materials and diaphragms.

#### There are three main types of diaphragm pumps:

- ✓ Those in which the diaphragm is sealed with one side in the fluid to be pumped, and the other in air or hydraulic fluid. The diaphragm is flexed, causing the volume of the pump chamber to increase and decrease. A pair of non-return check valves prevent reverse flow of the fluid.
- ✓ Those employing volumetric positive displacement where the prime mover of the diaphragm is electro-mechanical, working through a crank or geared motor drive. This method flexes the diaphragm through simple mechanical action, and one side of the diaphragm is open to air.
- ✓ Those employing one or more unsealed diaphragms with the fluid to be pumped on both sides. The diaphragm(s) again are flexed, causing the volume to change.

When the volume of a chamber of either type of pump is increased (the diaphragm moving up), the pressure decreases, and fluid is drawn into the chamber. When the chamber pressure later increases from decreased volume (the diaphragm moving down), the fluid previously drawn in is forced out. Finally, the diaphragm moving up once again draws fluid into the chamber, completing the cycle. This action is similar to that of the cylinder in an internal combustion engine. The most popular type of diaphragm pump is the Air-Operated Diaphragm Pump.

These pumps use compressed air as their power supply. They also include two chambers with a diaphragm, inlet check valve and outlet check valve in each chamber. The air supply is shifted from one chamber to another with an air spool valve that is built into the pump. This continual shifting of air from one chamber to another (to the backside of the diaphragm) forces liquid out of one chamber and into the discharge piping while the other chamber is being filled with liquid. There is some pulsation of discharge flow in Air-Operated Diaphragm Pumps. This pulsating flow can be reduced somewhat by using pulsation dampeners in the discharge piping.

#### Characteristics

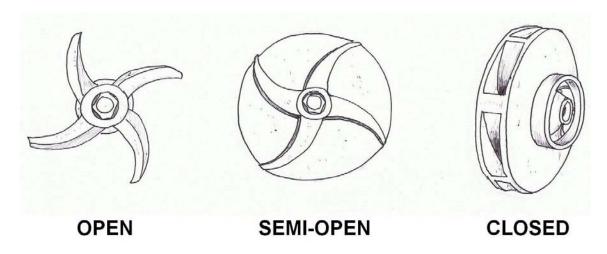
#### **Diaphragm Pumps:**

- ✓ have good suction lift characteristics, some are low pressure pumps with low flow rates; others are capable of higher flow rates, dependent on the effective working diameter of the diaphragm and its stroke length. They can handle sludges and slurries with a relatively high amount of grit and solid content.
- ✓ suitable for discharge pressure up to 1,200 bar.
- ✓ have good dry running characteristics.
- ✓ can be used to make artificial hearts.
- ✓ are used to make air pumps for the filters on small fish tanks.
- ✓ can be up to 97% efficient.
- √ have good self-priming capabilities.

- ✓ can handle highly viscous liquids.
- ✓ are available for industrial, chemical and hygienic applications.
- ✓ cause a pulsating flow that may cause water hammer.

#### **Vapor Pressure and Cavitation**

Cavitation is the formation and then immediate implosion of cavities in a liquid – i.e. small liquid-free zones ("bubbles") – that are the consequence of forces acting upon the liquid. It usually occurs when a liquid is subjected to rapid changes of pressure that cause the formation of cavities where the pressure is relatively low. Cavitation is a significant cause of wear in some engineering contexts. When entering high pressure areas, cavitation bubbles that implode on a metal surface cause cyclic stress. These results in surface fatigue of the metal causing a type of wear also called "cavitation". The most common examples of this kind of wear are pump impellers and bends when a sudden change in the direction of liquid occurs. Cavitation is usually divided into two classes of behavior: inertial (or transient) cavitation and non-inertial cavitation.



## **IMPELLER TYPES**

#### **Inertial Cavitation**

Inertial cavitation is the process where a void or bubble in a liquid rapidly collapses, producing a shock wave. Inertial cavitation occurs in nature in the strikes of mantis shrimps and pistol shrimps, as well as in the vascular tissues of plants. In man-made objects, it can occur in control valves, pumps, propellers and impellers.

#### **Non-inertial Cavitation**

Non-inertial cavitation is the process in which a bubble in a fluid is forced to oscillate in size or shape due to some form of energy input, such as an acoustic field. Such cavitation is often employed in ultrasonic cleaning baths and can also be observed in pumps, propellers, etc.

Since the shock waves formed by cavitation are strong enough to significantly damage moving parts, cavitation is usually an undesirable phenomenon. It is specifically avoided in the design of machines such as turbines or propellers, and eliminating cavitation is a major field in the study of fluid dynamics.

To understand Cavitation, you must first understand vapor pressure. Vapor pressure is the pressure required to boil a liquid at a given temperature. Soda water is a good example of a high vapor pressure liquid. Even at room temperature the carbon dioxide entrained in the soda is released. In a closed container, the soda is pressurized, keeping the vapor entrained.

Temperature affects vapor pressure as well, raises the water's temperature to 212°F and the vapors are released because at that increased temperature the vapor pressure is greater than the atmospheric pressure.

Pump cavitation occurs when the pressure in the pump inlet drops below the vapor pressure of the liquid. Vapor bubbles form at the inlet of the pump and are moved to the discharge of the pump where they collapse, often taking small pieces of the pump with them. Cavitation is often characterized by:

- ✓ Loud noise often described as a grinding or "marbles" in the pump.
- ✓ Loss of capacity (bubbles are now taking up space where liquid should be).
- ✓ Pitting damage to parts as material is removed by the collapsing bubbles.

Noise is a nuisance and lower flows will slow your process, but pitting damage will ultimately decrease the life of the pump.

#### In general, cavitation performance is related to some "critical" value:

NPSHA (=available) > NPSHc or NPSHR (=critical or required)

Typical "critical" characteristics identified for centrifugal pumps:

- Incipient cavitation (NPSHi)
- Developed cavitation causing 3% head drop (NPSH3%)
- Developed cavitation causing complete head breakdown(vapor lock).

# Choice of NPSHR is rather arbitrary, but usually NPSHR=NPSH3% Alternative choices:

- NPSHR=NPSH1% or NPSHR=NPSH5%
- NPSHR=NPSHi (cavitation free operation)

#### Cavitation causes or may cause:

- Performance loss (head drop)
- Material damage (cavitation erosion)
- Vibrations
- Noise
- Vapor lock (if suction pressure drops below break-off value)

The definition of NPSHA is simple: Static head + surface pressure head - the vapor pressure of your product - the friction losses in the piping, valves and fittings. But to really understand it, you first have to understand a couple of other concepts:

- ✓ Cavitation is what net positive suction head (NPSH) is all about, so you need to know a little about cavitation.
- ✓ Vapor Pressure is another term we will be using. The product's vapor pressure varies with the fluid's temperature.
- ✓ Specific gravity play an important part in all calculations involving liquid. You have to be familiar with the term.
- ✓ You have to be able to read a pump curve to learn the N.P.S.H. required for your pump.
- ✓ You need to understand how the liquid's velocity affects its pressure or head.
- ✓ It is important to understand why we use the term Head instead of Pressure when we make our calculations.
- ✓ Head loss is an awkward term, but you will need to understand it.

#### You will have to be able to calculate the head loss through piping, valves and fittings.

- ✓ You must know the difference between gage pressure and absolute pressure.
- ✓ Vacuum is often a part of the calculations, so you are going to have to be familiar with the terms we use to describe vacuum.

#### Let's look at each of these concepts in a little more detail:

- ✓ Cavitation means cavities or holes in liquid. Another name for a hole in a liquid is a bubble, so cavitation is all about bubbles forming and collapsing.
- ✓ Bubbles take up space so the capacity of our pump drops.
- ✓ Collapsing bubbles can damage the impeller and volute. This makes cavitation a problem for both the pump and the mechanical seal.
- ✓ Vapor pressure is about liquids boiling. If I asked you, "at what temperature does water boil?" You could say 212° F. or 100° C., but that is only true at atmospheric pressure. Every product will boil (make bubbles) at some combination of pressure and temperature. If you know the temperature of your product you need to know its vapor pressure to prevent boiling and the formation of bubbles. In the charts section of this web site you will find a vapor pressure chart for several common liquids.
- ✓ Specific gravity is about the weight of the fluid. Using 4°C (39°F) as our temperature standard we assign fresh water a value of one. If the fluid floats on this fresh water it has a specific gravity is less than one. If the fluid sinks in this water the specific gravity of the fluid is greater than one.

- ✓ Look at any pump curve and make sure you can locate the values for head, capacity, best efficiency point (B.E.P.), efficiency, net positive suction head (NPSH), and horse power required. If you cannot do this, have someone show you where they are located.
- ✓ Liquid velocity is another important concept. As a liquid's velocity increases, its pressure (90° to the flow) decreases. If the velocity decreases the pressure increases. The rule is : velocity times pressure must remain a constant.
- ✓ "Head" is the term we use instead of pressure. The pump will pump any liquid to a given height or head depending upon the diameter and speed of the impeller. The amount of pressure you get depends upon the weight (specific gravity) of the liquid. The pump manufacturer does not know what liquid the pump will be pumping so he gives you only the head that the pump will generate. You have to figure out the pressure using a formula described later on in this paper.
- ✓ Head (feet) is a convenient term because when combined with capacity (gallons or pounds per minute) you come up with the conversion for horsepower (foot pounds per minute).
- ✓ "Head loss through the piping, valves and fittings" is another term we will be using. Pressure drop is a more comfortable term for most people, but the term "pressure" is not used in most pump calculations so you could substitute the term "head drop" or "loss of head" in the system. To calculate this loss you will need to be able to read charts like those you will find in the "charts you can use" section in the home page of this web site. They are labeled Friction loss for water and Resistance coefficients for valves and fittings.
- ✓ Gage and absolute pressure. Add atmospheric pressure to the gage pressure and you get absolute pressure.
- ✓ Vacuum is a pressure less than atmospheric. At sea level atmospheric pressure is 14.7 psi. (760 mm of Mercury). Vacuum gages are normally calibrated in inches or millimeters of mercury.

To calculate the net positive suction head (NPSH) of your pump and determine if you are going to have a cavitation problem, you will need access to several additional pieces of information:

✓ The curve for your pump. This pump curve is supplied by the pump manufacturer. Someone in your plant should have a copy. The curve is going to show you the Net Positive Suction Head (NPSH) required for your pump at a given capacity. Each pump is different so make sure you have the correct pump curve and use the numbers for the impeller diameter on your pump. Keep in mind that this NPSH required was for cold, fresh water.

- ✓ A chart or some type of publication that will give you the vapor pressure of the fluid you are pumping.
- ✓ If you would like to be a little more exact, you can use a chart to show the possible reduction in NPSH required if you are pumping hot water or light hydrocarbons.
- ✓ You need to know the specific gravity of your fluid. Keep in mind that the number is temperature sensitive. You can get this number from a published chart, ask some knowledgeable person at your plant, or take a reading on the fluid using a hydrometer.
- ✓ Charts showing the head loss through the size of piping you are using between the source and the suction eye of your pump. You will also need charts to calculate the loss in any fittings, valves, or other hardware that might have been installed in the suction piping.
- ✓ Is the tank you are pumping from at atmospheric pressure or is it pressurized in some manner? Maybe it is under a vacuum?
- ✓ You need to know the atmospheric pressure at the time you are making your calculation. We all know atmospheric pressure changes throughout the day, but you have to start somewhere.

# The formulas for converting pressure to head and head back to pressure in the imperial system are as follows:

```
o sg. = specific gravity
o pressure = pounds per square inch
```

o head = feet

You also need to know the formulas that show you how to convert vacuum readings to feet of head. Here are a few of them:

#### To convert surface pressure to feet of liquid; use one of the following formulas:

- ✓ Inches of mercury x 1.133 / specific gravity = feet of liquid
- ✓ Pounds per square inch x 2.31 / specific gravity = feet of liquid
- ✓ Millimeters of mercury / (22.4 x specific gravity) = feet of liquid

# There are different ways to think about net positive suction head (NPSH) but they all have two terms in common.

- ✓ NPSHA (net positive suction head available)
- ✓ NPSHR (net positive suction head required)

NPSHR (net positive suction head required) is defined as the NPSH at which the pump total head (first stage head in multi stage pumps) has decreased by three percent (3%) due to low suction head and resultant cavitation within the pump. This number is shown on your pump curve, but it is going to be too low if you are pumping hydrocarbon liquids or hot water.

Cavitation begins as small harmless bubbles before you get any indication of loss of head or capacity. This is called the point of incipient cavitation. Testing has shown that it takes from two to twenty times the NPSHR (net positive suction head required) to fully suppress incipient cavitation, depending on the impeller shape (specific speed number) and operating conditions. To stop a product from vaporizing or boiling at the low pressure side of the pump the NPSHA (net positive suction head available) must be equal to or greater than the NPSHR (net positive suction head required).

## **Rope Pumps**

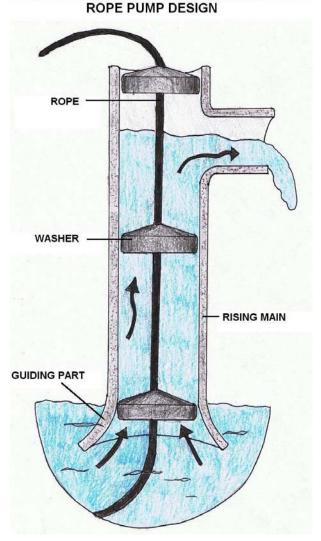
Devised in China as chain pumps over 1000 years ago, these pumps can be made from very simple materials: A rope, a wheel and a PVC pipe are sufficient to make a simple rope pump. For this reason they have become extremely popular around the world since the 1980s. Rope pump efficiency has been studied by grass roots organizations and the techniques for making and running them has been continuously improved. The pumping elements of the rope pump are the pistons and the endless rope, which pull the water to the surface through the pumping pipe made of PVC or plastic. The rotation of the wheel, moved by the handle, pulls the rope and the pistons. The pistons, made of polypropylene or polyethylene injected into molds, are of high precision to prevent hydraulic losses. The structure is basically made out of angle iron, piping and concrete steel. The pulley wheel is made out of the two internal rings cut out of truck tires and joined by staples and spokes, which must be strong for intensive use. A guide box at the bottom of the well leads the rope into the pumping pipe. The guide box is made out of concrete with an internal glazed ceramic piece to prevent any wear. The rope pump can be operated by the whole family and is also used at the community level, for small agriculture production or

cattle watering. It is also a high efficiency and low cost technology, but includes some pieces of high precision and high quality.

#### The Guide

The guide is installed at the bottom of the well and is where the pumping process is initiated. Its function consists of guiding the rope with pistons attached so that it enters into the pumping pipe from below, as well as maintaining the pipes taught (plumbed) with the appropriate tension. Therefore, the guide has various functions integrated into one piece. It serves as well as a counterweight to tauten the rope in order to avoid sliding on the wheel. The guide is a concrete box with a base piece, an entry pipe, a pumping pipe and support pipe, and a ceramic piece inside. These parts of the guide must be made in such a way that the rope never touches the concrete, which would cause wear to it as well as to the pistons. In the production are no iron parts involved and therefore, the rope pump is not susceptible to rust problems and can be used in very corrosive water. The entry and pumping pipes on the guide have a wide mouth to facilitate the entry of the rope and pistons.

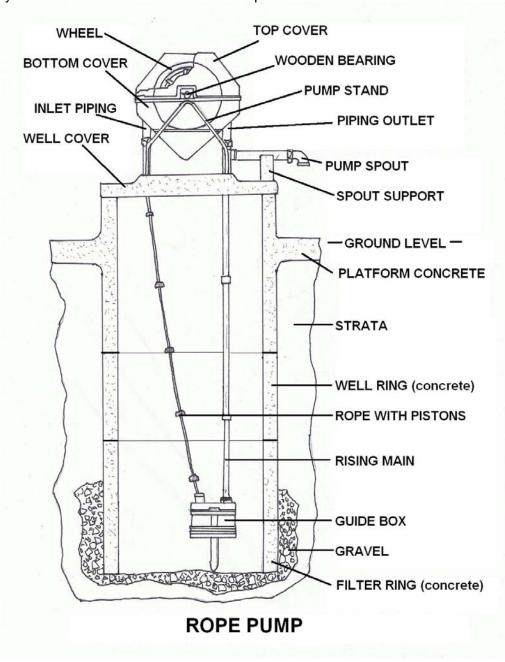
The water enters the guide through the base piece (2" PVC pipe) located at about five centimeters from the bottom of the guide. The guide itself is placed on the bottom of the well. This allows practically all of the water to be drained from the well.



This is important when a well has very little water, as water can still be extracted, which would not be the case with a bucket and rope.

#### The Ceramic Piece

The ceramic piece in the center of the guide has a design that was developed based on practical work and corresponds to various needs at the moment of assembly. The ceramic piece is shaped like a horse saddle to stop the rope from leaving the canal formed by the saddle. The ceramic piece is made of refractory clay similar to white porcelain. Its vitrification temperature is between 1250 °C and 1300 °C. The ceramic piece has a coat of enamel, which makes it completely smooth there where it touches the rope. This enamel does not wear.

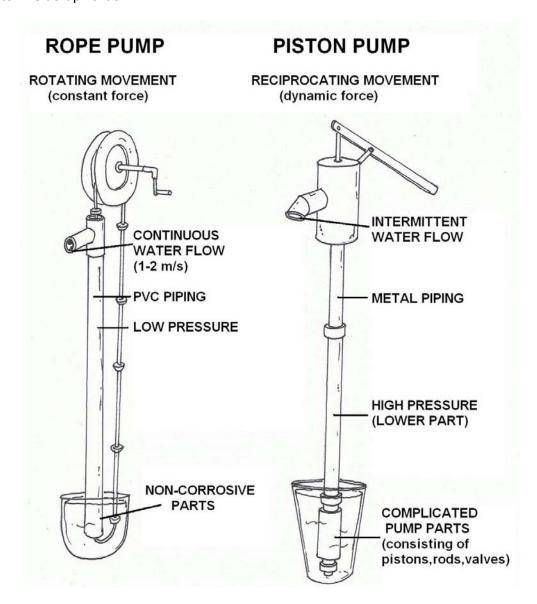


#### Wheel

The function of the rope pump structure is to support the efforts of the axle, wheel, and crank, as well as fix the pumping pipe, both entry and exit sections. It is the esthetic part (Visible) of the pump and is installed on the well cover. The types of materials and their diameters depend on the use given to the equipment. The structure is basically made out of pipes, iron rods, iron strip and angle iron. The pulley wheel is made out of the two internal rings cut out of truck tires and joined by clamps and spokes, which must be strong for intensive use. The 20" inch truck tires are used, but for wells deeper than 29 meters 16 " inch tires are used.

#### **Pistons**

The pistons are one of the most sensitive parts of the pump. Together with the rope they form an endless chain. When the rope rotates it leads the piston through the pumping pipe, pushing the water inside upwards.



The piston is a cone shaped part with a hole on its top and must meet the following norms:

- ✓ Exact dimensions.
- ✓ Cone shape to reduce friction.
- ✓ Strong and water-resistant material.
- ✓ The piston diameters vary with depth as do the pumping pipe.
- ✓ Piston diameter is determined by the type of pipe to be used and the well's depth.

  Pistons should be made of injected polypropylene or polyethylene. Neither rubber nor wood are recommended.
- ✓ The rope's length, diameter and amount of pistons are determined by the well's depth.
- ✓ Two-inch (0 3.5 meters depth) and 1  $\frac{1}{2}$ " inch (3.5 5 meters depth) pistons are used in wells which are not too deep or when motor driven rope pumps are used.
- ✓ A perfect fit is required between the pistons and the pumping pipe. The space between piston and inner wall of the pipe is only 0.15 mm for the 1/2 inch pipe and up to 0.40 mm for the 1 inch pipe. The production of the molds thus requires high precision.

Piston production requires a small plastic injection machine, and different-size molds. The pistons are made of high-density polypropylene or polyethylene. Polyethylene is poured in the injection machine hopper. As the plastic passes through the heated hopper bottom, it becomes fluid and is injected into the mold. As it cools, the plastic adopts the mold's form.

#### **Pipes**

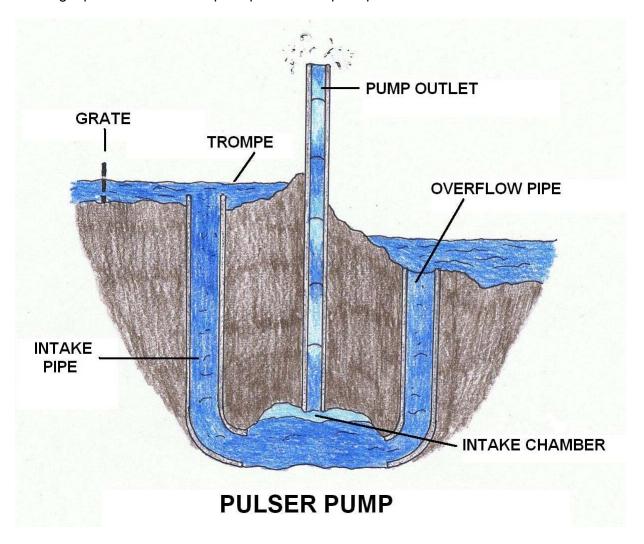
The pumping pipes are a fundamental part of the rope pump. The recommended pipe should meet ASTM D-2241 standards. All piping is the pressure type used for potable water. In Nicaragua, measurements are in inches, whereas other countries use millimeter measurements, requiring adaptation. Several countries have changed from PVC to plastic pipes, these equally can be used in rope pump production.

A fundamental difference with the traditional piston pumps is that the weight of the water column is distributed over the pistons and is thus hanging on the rope. The inside pressure on the pipe wall is minimum and as high as the water column between two pistons. The pumping process is a continuous process and not an intermittent up and down movement, therefor there is no fatiguing breakage. Only the pumping pipes plus the guide box are hanging on the upper pumping pipe.

Pumping pipes vary according to the depth of the well. The deeper the well, the smaller the diameter of the pipe. The maximum weight of the water in the pipes is 10 kilograms and should not be exceeded. Therefore, if pipes with different measurements are used, the maximum depth should be adapted to the maximum weight of 10 kilograms. The diameter of the pipes is determined by the depth from wellhead to water level. Deficiencies have been encountered in the pipes depending on their origin of production.

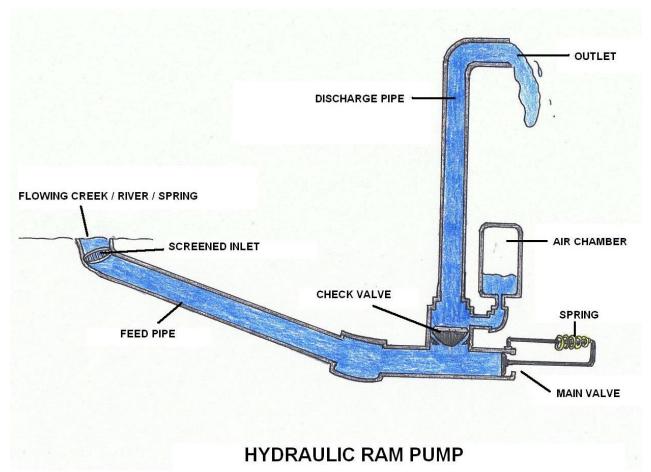
## **Impulse Pumps**

Impulse pumps use pressure created by gas (usually air). In some impulse pumps the gas trapped in the liquid (usually water), is released and accumulated somewhere in the pump, creating a pressure which can push part of the liquid upwards.



#### Impulse pumps include:

- ✓ Hydraulic ram pumps uses pressure built up internally from released gas in liquid flow.
- ✓ Pulser pumps run with natural resources, by kinetic energy only.
- ✓ Airlift pumps run on air inserted into pipe, pushing up the water, when bubbles move upward, or on pressure inside pipe pushing water up.



## **Hydraulic Ram Pumps**

A hydraulic ram is a water pump powered by hydropower. It functions as a hydraulic transformer that takes in water at one "hydraulic head" (pressure) and flow-rate, and outputs water at a higher hydraulic-head and lower flow-rate. The device uses the water hammer effect to develop pressure that allows a portion of the input water that powers the pump to be lifted to a point higher than where the water originally started. The hydraulic ram is sometimes used in remote areas, where there is both a source of low-head hydropower, and a need for pumping water to a destination higher in elevation than the source. In this situation, the ram is often useful, since it requires no outside source of power other than the kinetic energy of flowing water.

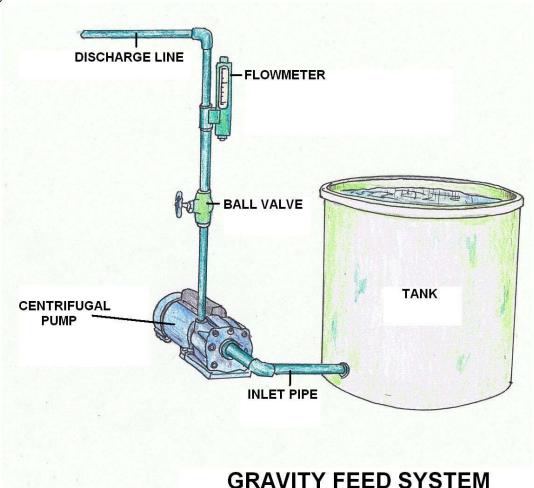
#### **Velocity Pumps**

Rotodynamic pumps (or dynamic pumps) are a type of velocity pump in which kinetic energy is added to the fluid by increasing the flow velocity. This increase in energy is converted to a gain in potential energy (pressure) when the velocity is reduced prior to or as the flow exits the pump into the discharge pipe. This conversion of kinetic energy to pressure can be explained by the First law of thermodynamics or more specifically by Bernoulli's principle. Dynamic pumps can be further subdivided according to the means in which the velocity gain is achieved.

#### These types of pumps have a number of characteristics:

- 1. Continuous energy
- 2. Conversion of added energy to increase in kinetic energy (increase in velocity)
- 3. Conversion of increased velocity (kinetic energy) to an increase in pressure head

One practical difference between dynamic and positive displacement pumps is their ability to operate under closed valve conditions. Positive displacement pumps physically displace the fluid; hence closing a valve downstream of a positive displacement pump will result in a continual build up in pressure resulting in mechanical failure of either pipeline or pump. Dynamic pumps differ in that they can be safely operated under closed valve conditions (for short periods of time).

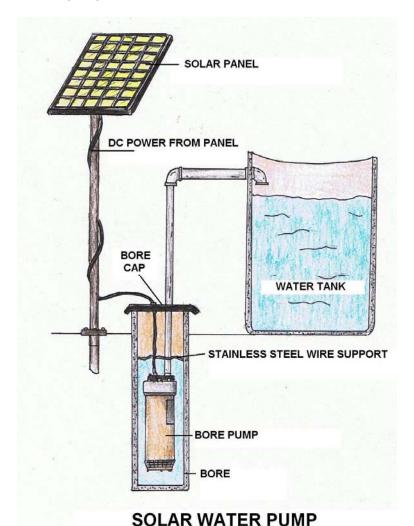


#### **Gravity Pumps**

Gravity pumps include the syphon and Heron's fountain – and there also important qanat or foggara systems which simply use downhill flow to take water from far-underground aquifers in high areas to consumers at lower elevations. The hydraulic ram is also sometimes referred to as a gravity pump.

#### Gravity

The ability of water to flow from higher to lower elevations makes a gravity system the one to utilize whenever possible. With no moving parts or energy inputs, these systems can provide dependable, low-maintenance service. To allow for flow resistance in the pipe, a minimum delivery pipe diameter 1 1/4 in. should be used where the grade is over I%. For grades between 0.5% and 1.0%, a 1 1/2 in. minimum size is recommended. Grades less than 0.2% are not recommended for gravity systems. Lay the delivery pipe on a uniform grade to prevent airlocks from forming. Water tank volume should reflect livestock numbers and water demand. If necessary, add gravel to ensure the tank area is stable to withstand herd traffic. A float at the water tank or an overflow outlet would control these conditions. Put a shade canopy over the tank to control seasonal algae growth.



#### **Solar Power**

Photovoltaic (PV) or solar panels can be used to power pumping systems for a wide range of output requirements. Solar systems can be very reliable and low in maintenance, but are expensive and require good design for practical service. Two system designs can be used depending upon the application.

Both systems involve storing energy to compensate for variances in solar radiation intensity. Systems that use energy storage in the form of pumped water held in an elevated reservoir have the advantage of design simplicity. Solar panels supply power to the water pump through a maximum power point device to deliver water to the reservoir only during periods of bright sunlight. Water from the reservoir is gravity fed to the stock trough and controlled by a float valve. Battery systems also store energy for use during periods of low sunlight intensity. Through a sequencing device, solar panels charge the batteries that power the water pump. Pump operation is controlled by an electric float switch to allow flow on demand to the stock trough. Proper design of a solar system is critical to meet the specific needs of the user. Consider a suntracker if you are concerned about space for sufficient number of panels. A tracker follows the sun as the day progresses and maximizes panel exposure to the sun.

#### **Heissler Pump**

This pump was designed by Paul Heissler of Frankford, Ontario. It is an inexpensive system and can be built from materials around the farm. It has a 12 volt submersible pump sitting in shallow water driven by a tractor battery. A 45 gallon drum acts as a reservoir with a float to control water level. A small trough is attached. Water flows into the trough by gravity as the livestock drink it down. The pump will deliver 22 gallons per minute. The battery is covered to protect it from the weather. This unit sits on top of the reservoir. The height and distance water is pumped limits the use of the Heissler pump. The more energy required for pumping water the more often the battery needs recharging. The battery charge has lasted 24 days, drawing water up 10 ft and providing water to 44 head of cattle.

#### **Hydraulic Rams**

Hydraulic ram pumps have been used since the 1700s. New designs with the same principles are being used today. Falling water is required to operate a hydraulic ram pump. If installed correctly the pump moves water as high as 10 times the fall. The weight of falling water drives a lesser amount to an elevation above the source of supply. The pump operates on the basis of the falling water opening and closing 2 valves with air pressure forcing the water to its destination. The volume of water a ram pumps depends on the size of the pump, the fall between the source of supply and the ram, the height to which the water is to be raised and the quantity of water available. Output ranges from 700 to 3,000 gallons per day depending on these factors. A small stream is an excellent source to water livestock. Water needs to flow into the pump at 1 to 5 gallons per minute. A fall of 2 ft. or more is sufficient to drive a ram capable of pumping water to a stock trough at considerable elevation and distance. As the pumping rate is constant but generally slow, a storage reservoir may be necessary to accommodate high demand periods.

Hydraulic ram pumps are a time-tested technology that uses the energy of a large amount of water falling a small height to lift a small amount of that water to a much greater height. In this way, water from a spring or stream in a valley can be pumped to a village or irrigation scheme on the hillside.

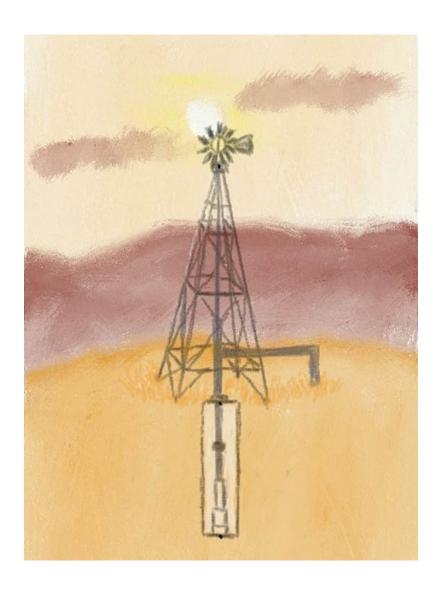
Depending on the difference in heights between the inlet pipe and the outlet pipe, these water pumps will lift 1-20 percent of the water that flows into it. In general, a ram can pump approximately one tenth of the received water volume to a height ten times greater than the intake. A hydraulic ram pump is useful where the water source flows constantly and the usable fall from the water source to the pump location is at least 91 cm (3 ft).

Since ram pumps can only be used in situations where falling water is available, their use is restricted to three main applications:

- ✓ lifting drinking water from springs to settlements on higher ground.
- ✓ pumping drinking water from streams that have significant slope.
- ✓ lifting irrigation water from streams or raised irrigation channels.

### Ram Pump Advantages include:

- 1. Inexpensive
- 2. Very simple construction and easy to install yourself.
- 3. Does not consume petrol, diesel or electricity.
- 4. Minimum maintenance.
- 5. Pollution free.
- 6. Quiet pumping 24 hours per day.



### **Wind Mills**

In the past, windmills have been a proven part of the farm enterprise and could find greater use for livestock water purposes today. Though now a fairly expensive technology, currently manufactured windmills are reliable and need little maintenance, equal to their antique counterparts. Old windmills can be successfully rebuilt and may offer a practical alternative to the expense of new equipment. Modern windmills will operate in a stream, pond or shallow well. The pump sits on the surface or in the water. An airline connects the pump to the windmill. Air pressure generated by the windmill activates the pump. Water is pumped when there is wind. The windmill can be located up to 300 ft. from the water source and at the best location to catch the wind. It can lift water up to 20 ft. and pump 5 gallons per minute. As wind is a variable energy source, use a storage reservoir to provide a supply for periods of low wind velocity. Locate the storage reservoir within 1,000 ft. of the water source.

## Pasture (Nose) Pumps

Using a simple pumping mechanism to draw water to a bowl, the nose pump is a good alternative to in stream watering. Installation is quick and easy - easy enough to use as portable system for rotation pastures. Animals push a plunger with their nose to move water with a diaphragm pump into a bowl. The pump is a rubber diaphragm and 2 check valves. One push of the plunger brings water in on the forward stroke and again as it is released. The intake line incorporates a foot valve and strainer for reliable operation. The water source may be a nearby stream, pond or well of suitable quality.

A disadvantage of the nose pump is that stock must water individually, limiting practical use to about 25 animals per unit. Maximum lift from the water source is 25 ft. Where there is very little lift required nose pumps can draw water from 200 to 3,000 ft, depending on the pump size. Nose pumps are relatively low in cost and installation expense is minimal. Animals must be trained to use them. Young calves may have difficulty at the beginning.

- Nose pumps are generally not the least cost or the most desirable watering facility option unless the site is too distant from farmstead facilities, water lines, springs, etc. to make conventional pipeline and water tubs impracticable or cost prohibitive.
- The livestock watering system shall have capacity to meet the water requirements of the livestock.
- Due to the water requirements of dairy milkers, nose pumps may not be a viable option unless the number of animals being served is very low.
- The site should be well drained, or if not, drainage measures will be provided. Areas adjacent to the nose pump that will be trampled by livestock shall be graveled, or otherwise treated to provide firm footing and to reduce erosion.
- Design and install watering facilities to prevent overturning by wind and animals.
- Nose pump sites must be chosen that have a low risk on contaminating surface or ground water.
- Water intake pipes shall be protected to prevent damage by livestock.
- Nose pump(s) will be protected from freezing by draining and storing under cover.

#### The following O&M activities will be planned and applied as needed:

- Repair damaged components as necessary.
- Install and maintain fences as needed to prevent livestock damage to the system and appurtenances.
- Maintain the area adjacent to the nose pump(s) in a stable, well-drained condition to prevent rutting, ponding and erosion from livestock use. Maintain surface treatment for livestock footing.
- During winter months, the nose pump and hose must be removed and placed under cover, drained of water, and stored out of reach of children.

### **Priming a Pump**

Liquid and slurry pumps can lose prime and this will require the pump to be primed by adding liquid to the pump and inlet pipes to get the pump started. Loss of "prime" is usually due to ingestion of air into the pump. The clearances and displacement ratios in pumps used for liquids and other more viscous fluids cannot displace the air due to its lower density.

## **Understanding Progressing Cavity Pump Theory**

Progressing cavity pumps (PCPs) are a special type of rotary positive displacement pump where the produced fluid is displaced axially at a constant rate. This characteristic enables progressing cavity pumps to produce viscous, abrasive, multiphase and gaseous fluids and slurries over a wide range of flow rates and differential pressures. Progressing cavity pumps are comprised of two helicoidal gears (rotor and stator), where the rotor is positioned inside the stator. The combination of rotational movement and geometry of the rotor inside the stator results in the formation of cavities that move axially from pump suction to pump discharge.

Rotors are typically machined from high-strength steel and then coated with a wear resistant material to resist abrasion and reduce stator/rotor friction. Stators consist of steel tubular with an elastomer core bonded to the steel. The elastomer is molded into the shape of an internal helix to match the rotor.

In operation progressive cavity pumps are fundamentally fixed flow rate pumps, like piston pumps and peristaltic pumps, and this type of pump needs a fundamentally different understanding to the types of pumps to which people are more commonly first introduced, namely ones that can be thought of as generating pressure. This can lead to the mistaken assumption that all pumps can have their flow rates adjusted by using a valve attached to their outlet, but with this type of pump this assumption is a problem, since such a valve will have practically no effect on the flow rate and completely closing it will involve very high pressures being generated. To prevent this, pumps are often fitted with cut-off pressure switches, burst disks (deliberately weak and easily replaced), or a bypass pipe that allows a variable amount a fluid to return to the inlet. With a bypass fitted, a fixed flow rate pump is effectively converted to a fixed pressure one.

At the points where the rotor touches the stator, the surfaces are generally traveling transversely, so small areas of sliding contact occur. These areas need to be lubricated by the fluid being pumped (Hydrodynamic lubrication). This can mean that more torque is required for starting, and if allowed to operate without fluid, called 'run dry', rapid deterioration of the stator can result. While progressive cavity pumps offer long life and reliable service transporting thick or lumpy

#### **Helical Rotor and a Twin Helix**

The progressive cavity pump consists of a helical rotor and a twin helix, twice the wavelength and double the diameter helical hole in a rubber stator. The rotor seals tightly against the rubber stator as it rotates, forming a set of fixed-size cavities in between. The cavities move when the rotor is rotated but their shape or volume does not change. The pumped material is moved inside the cavities.

The principle of this pumping technique is frequently misunderstood. Often it is believed to occur due to a dynamic effect caused by drag, or friction against the moving teeth of the screw rotor. In reality it is due to the sealed cavities, like a piston pump, and so has similar operational characteristics, such as being able to pump at extremely low rates, even to high pressure, revealing the effect to be purely positive displacement.

At a high enough pressure the sliding seals between cavities will leak some fluid rather than pumping it, so when pumping against high pressures a longer pump with more cavities is more effective, since each seal has only to deal with the pressure difference between adjacent cavities. Pumps with between two and a dozen (or so) cavities exist.

When the rotor is rotated, it rolls around the inside surface of the hole. The motion of the rotor is the same as the smaller gears of a planetary gears system. As the rotor simultaneously rotates and moves around, the combined motion of the eccentrically mounted drive shaft is in the form of a hypocycloid. In the typical case of single-helix rotor and double-helix stator, the hypocycloid is just a straight line. The rotor must be driven through a set of universal joints or other mechanisms to allow for the movement.

The rotor takes a form similar to a corkscrew, and this, combined with the off-center rotary motion, leads to the alternative name: eccentric screw pump. Different rotor shapes and rotor/stator pitch ratios exist, but are specialized in that they don't generally allow complete sealing, so reducing low speed pressure and flow rate linearity, but improving actual flow rates, for a given pump size, and/or the pump's solids handling ability

Specific designs involve the rotor of the pump being made of a steel, coated with a smooth hard surface, normally chromium, with the body (the stator) made of a molded elastomer inside a metal tube body. The elastomer core of the stator forms the required complex cavities. The rotor is held against the inside surface of the stator by angled link arms, bearings (immersed in the fluid) allowing it to roll around the inner surface (un-driven).

#### **Elastomer**

Elastomer is used for the stator to simplify the creation of the complex internal shape, created by means of casting, which also improves the quality and longevity of the seals by progressively swelling due to absorption of water and/or other common constituents of pumped fluids. Elastomer/pumped fluid compatibility will thus need to be taken into account. Two common designs of stator are the "equal-walled" and the "unequal-walled". The latter, having greater elastomer wall thickness at the peaks allows larger-sized solids to pass through because of its increased ability to distort under pressure. The former have a constant elastomer wall thickness and therefore exceed in most other aspects such as pressure per stage, precision, heat transfer, wear and weight. They are more expensive due to the complex shape of the outer tube.

Cavities are created by the geometry of the rotor and stator where the stator has one more lobe than the rotor. The cavities are moved axially along the pump by the rotating motion of the rotor. The motion of the rotor is a combination of a clockwise rotation of the rotor along its own axis and a counterclockwise rotation of the rotor eccentrically about the axis of the stator. Because the volume of each cavity remains constant throughout the process, the pump delivers a uniform non-pulsating flow. The total pressure capability of the pump is determined by the maximum pressure that can be generated within each cavity times the total number of cavities.

PC pumps are manufactured with a variety of stator/rotor tooth combinations. Typically artificial lift applications use a two-tooth stator and a single tooth rotor pump referred to as single-lobe pump. Higher stator/rotor tooth combinations, such as 3/2, are used to achieve higher volumetric and lift capacity although with higher torque requirements.

## **Understanding Pump NPSH**

NPSH is an initialism for Net Positive Suction Head. In any cross-section of a generic hydraulic circuit, the NPSH parameter shows the difference between the actual pressure of a liquid in a pipeline and the liquid's vapor pressure at a given temperature. NPSH is an important parameter to take into account when designing a circuit: whenever the liquid pressure drops below the vapor pressure, liquid boiling occurs, and the final effect will be cavitation: vapor bubbles may reduce or stop the liquid flow, as well as damage the system.

Centrifugal pumps are particularly vulnerable especially when pumping heated solution near the vapor pressure, whereas positive displacement pumps are less affected by cavitation, as they are better able to pump two-phase flow (the mixture of gas and liquid), however, the resultant flow rate of the pump will be diminished because of the gas volumetrically displacing a disproportion of liquid. Careful design is required to pump high temperature liquids with a centrifugal pump when the liquid is near its boiling point.

The violent collapse of the cavitation bubble creates a shock wave that can literally carve material from internal pump components (usually the leading edge of the impeller) and creates noise often described as "pumping gravel". Additionally, the inevitable increase in vibration can cause other mechanical faults in the pump and associated equipment.

#### A somewhat simpler informal way to understand NPSH...

Fluid can be pushed down a pipe with a great deal of force. The only limit is the ability of the pipe to withstand the pressure. However, a liquid cannot be pulled up a pipe with much force because bubbles are created as the liquid evaporates into a gas. The greater the vacuum created, the larger the bubble, so no more liquid will flow into the pump. Rather than thinking in terms of the pump's ability to pull the fluid, the flow is limited by the ability of gravity and air pressure to push the fluid into the pump. The atmosphere pushes down on the fluid, and if the pump is below the tank, the weight of the fluid from gravity above the pump inlet also helps. Until the fluid reaches the pump, those are the only two forces providing the push. Friction loss and vapor pressure must also be considered. Friction loss limits the ability of gravity and air pressure to push the water toward the pump at high speed. Vapor pressure refers to the point at which bubbles form in the liquid. NPSH is a measure of how much spare pull you have before the bubbles form.

Some helpful information regarding atmospheric pressure; Atmospheric pressure is always naturally occurring and is always around us. At sea level, it equates to 101.325 kPa or approximately 14 Psi OR 10 meters of liquid pressure head. As we move higher up mountains, the air gets thinner and the atmospheric pressure reduces.

This should be taken into account when designing pumping systems. The reason there is atmospheric pressure is simply due to earth's gravity and its position in our solar system. It is a natural phenomenon and we are very lucky to have it as water wells and bores with shallow aquifers allow us to use this atmospheric pressure to our advantage.

We all know that pressure gauges exist on pumping systems and other machines to give us an indication of what performances are being achieved. We also use known pressures versus known performance in order to create a reference for system designs.

An example would be an experienced pump technician or plumber knowing that a pressure of between 300 kPa and 500 kPa will provide adequate and comfortable pressure for household use.

A typical pressure gauge reads what is known as 'Gage Pressure,' or pressure relative to atmospheric pressure. An 'Absolute Pressure' gauge displays atmospheric pressure (typically 100 kPa or 14 psi or 10 meters of liquid pressure head) before any system had been connected. Manufacturers set typical gage pressure gauges to read ZERO at sea level as a standard, assuming designers will make allowances for the atmospheric pressure calculations themselves. Knowing this simple fact can make NPSH easier to understand.

If we now know that there is 100 kPa or 10 meters of head pressure, plus or minus whatever the gage pressure gauge shows, then we can safely see that this gives us an instant advantage of 10 meters of head pressure at sea level. This means we can borrow against this and drop a maximum of 10 meters into or under the ground (or below sea level) reducing the gauge to zero and still get natural 'push' into our pump. Great for wells and bores with shallow aquifers within this depth! It is important to note that to get to exactly 10 meters may be difficult, but with the correct pipework and system design, it is possible to get very close.

Once NPSH is fully understood, sizing and controlling pumps and pumping machines is a much simpler task.

NPSH is the liquid suction force at the intake of a pump. In other words, the force of a liquid naturally "pushing" into a pump from gravity pressure plus liquid head pressure only - into a single pump intake.

#### This means;

NPSH = the net (left over) positive pressure of suction force into a pump intake after friction loss has occurred. Liquid head height or liquid head pressure + gravity pressure, minus friction loss, leaves a net head pressure of force into the pump.

If we want to pump some amount of liquid, we have to ensure that this liquid can reach the center line of the suction point of the pump. NPSH represents the head (pressure and gravity head) of liquid in the suction line of the pump that will overcome the friction along the suction line.

NPSHR is the amount of liquid pressure required at the intake port of a pre-designed and manufactured pump.

This is known as NPSHR (Net Positive Suction Head Required). The pump manufacturer will usually clearly have a NPSH curve to assist you in the correct installation.

NPSHA is the amount (A = available) to the pump intake after pipe friction losses and head pressures have been taken into account.

#### The reason for this requirement?

When the pump is receiving liquid at intake port and the impeller is pushing the liquid out the discharge port, they are effectively trying to tear each other apart because the pump is changing the liquid movement by a pressure increase at the impeller vanes, (general pump installations). Insufficient NPSHR will cause a low or near-vacuum pressure (negative NPSHA) to exist at the pump intake. This will cause the liquid to boil and cause cavitation, and the pump will not receive the liquid fast enough because it will be attempting to pump vapor. Cavitation will lower pump performance and damage pump internals.

At low temperatures the liquid can "hold together" (remain fluid) relatively easily, hence a lower NPSH requirement. However at higher temperatures, the higher vapor pressure starts the boiling process much quicker, hence a high NPSH requirement.

- ✓ Water will boil at lower temperatures under lower pressures. Conversely its boiling point is higher at higher pressures.
- ✓ Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius at sea level and an atmospheric pressure of 1 bar.
- ✓ Vapor Pressure is the pressure of a gas in equilibrium with its liquid phase at a given temperature. If the vapor pressure at a given temperature is greater than the pressure of the atmosphere above the liquid, then the liquid will boil. (This is why water boils at a lower temperature high in the mountains).
- ✓ At normal atmospheric pressure minus 5 psi (or -0.35 bar) water will boil at 89 degrees Celsius.
- ✓ At normal atmospheric pressure minus 10 psi (or -0.7 bar) water will boil at 69 degrees Celsius.
- ✓ At a positive pressure of +12 psi or +0.82 bar above atmospheric, water will boil at 118 degrees Celsius.
- ✓ Liquid temperature greatly affects NPSH and must be taken into account when expensive installations are being designed.
- ✓ A pump designed with a NPSHR suitable for cold water may cavitate when pumping hot water

# **More on Positive Displacement Pumps**

A positive displacement pump causes a fluid to move by trapping a fixed amount of it and then forcing (displacing) that trapped volume into the discharge pipe. Some positive displacement pumps work using an expanding cavity on the suction side and a decreasing cavity on the discharge side. Liquid flows into the pump as the cavity on the suction side expands and the liquid flows out of the discharge as the cavity collapses. The volume is constant given each cycle of operation.

#### **Positive Displacement Pump Behavior and Safety**

Positive displacement pumps, unlike centrifugal or roto-dynamic pumps, will in theory produce the same flow at a given speed (RPM) no matter what the discharge pressure. Thus, positive displacement pumps are "constant flow machines". However due to a slight increase in internal leakage as the pressure increases, a truly constant flow rate cannot be achieved.

A positive displacement pump must not be operated against a closed valve on the discharge side of the pump, because it has no shut-off head like centrifugal pumps. A positive displacement pump operating against a closed discharge valve will continue to produce flow and the pressure in the discharge line will increase, until the line bursts or the pump is severely damaged, or both.

A relief or safety valve on the discharge side of the positive displacement pump is therefore necessary. The relief valve can be internal or external. The pump manufacturer normally has the option to supply internal relief or safety valves. The internal valve should in general only be used as a safety precaution, an external relief valve installed in the discharge line with a return line back to the suction line or supply tank is recommended.

#### **Priming a Pump**

Liquid and slurry pumps can lose prime and this will require the pump to be primed by adding liquid to the pump and inlet pipes to get the pump started. Loss of "prime" is usually due to ingestion of air into the pump. The clearances and displacement ratios in pumps used for liquids and other more viscous fluids cannot displace the air due to its lower density.

#### **Positive Displacement Types**

A positive displacement pump causes a liquid or gas to move by trapping a fixed amount of fluid or gas and then forcing (displacing) that trapped volume into the discharge pipe. Positive displacement pumps can be further classified as either rotary-type (for example the rotary vane) or lobe pumps similar to oil pumps used in car engines. Moreover, these pumps give a non-pulsating output or displacement unlike the reciprocating pumps and hence are called positive displacement pumps.

The positive displacement pump operates by alternating of filling a cavity and then displacing a given volume of liquid. The positive displacement pump delivers a constant volume of liquid for each cycle against varying discharge pressure or head.

### The positive displacement pump can be classified as:

- ✓ Reciprocating pumps piston, plunger and diaphragm
- ✓ Power pumps
- ✓ Steam pumps
- ✓ Rotary pumps gear, lobe, screw, vane, regenerative (peripheral) and progressive cavity

# A positive displacement pump can be further classified according to the mechanism used to move the fluid:

- ✓ Rotary-type positive displacement: internal gear, screw, shuttle block, flexible vane or sliding vane, circumferential piston, flexible impeller, helical twisted roots (e.g. the Wendelkolben pump) or liquid ring vacuum pumps.
- ✓ Reciprocating-type positive displacement: piston or diaphragm pumps.
- ✓ Linear-type positive displacement: rope pumps and chain pumps.

#### **Rotary Positive Displacement Pumps**

Positive displacement rotary pumps move fluid using a rotating mechanism that creates a vacuum that captures and draws in the liquid.

**Advantages**: Rotary pumps are very efficient because they naturally remove air from the lines, eliminating the need to bleed the air from the lines manually.

**Drawbacks**: Because of the nature of the pump, the clearance between the rotating pump and the outer edge must be very close, requiring that it rotate at a slow, steady speed. If rotary pumps are operated at high speeds, the fluids will cause erosion, eventually developing enlarged clearances through which liquid can pass, reducing the efficiency of the pump.

#### Rotary positive displacement pumps can be grouped into three main types:

- ✓ Gear pumps a simple type of rotary pump where the liquid is pushed between two gears.
- ✓ Screw pumps the shape of the internals of this pump usually two screws turning against each other pump the liquid.
- ✓ Rotary vane pumps similar to scroll compressors, consisting of a cylindrical rotor encased in a similarly shaped housing. As the rotor orbits, the vanes trap fluid between the rotor and the casing, drawing the fluid through the pump.

# **Reciprocating Positive Displacement Pumps**

Hand-operated, reciprocating, positive displacement, and Slovakia (walking beam pump).

Reciprocating pumps are those which cause the fluid to move using one or more oscillating pistons, plungers or membranes (diaphragms), and restrict motion of the fluid to the one desired direction by valves.

Pumps in this category range from "simplex", with one cylinder, to in some cases "quad" (four) cylinders or more. Many reciprocating-type pumps are "duplex" (two) or "triplex" (three) cylinder. They can be either "single-acting" with suction during one direction of piston motion and discharge on the other, or "double-acting" with suction and discharge in both directions. The pumps can be powered manually, by air or steam, or by a belt driven by an engine. This type of pump was used extensively in the early days of steam propulsion (19th century) as boiler feed water pumps. Reciprocating pumps are now typically used for pumping highly viscous fluids including concrete and heavy oils, and special applications demanding low flow rates against high resistance. Reciprocating hand pumps were widely used for pumping water from wells; the common bicycle pump and foot pumps for inflation use reciprocating action.

These positive displacement pumps have an expanding cavity on the suction side and a decreasing cavity on the discharge side. Liquid flows into the pumps as the cavity on the suction side expands and the liquid flows out of the discharge as the cavity collapses. The volume is constant given each cycle of operation.

#### Typical reciprocating pumps are:

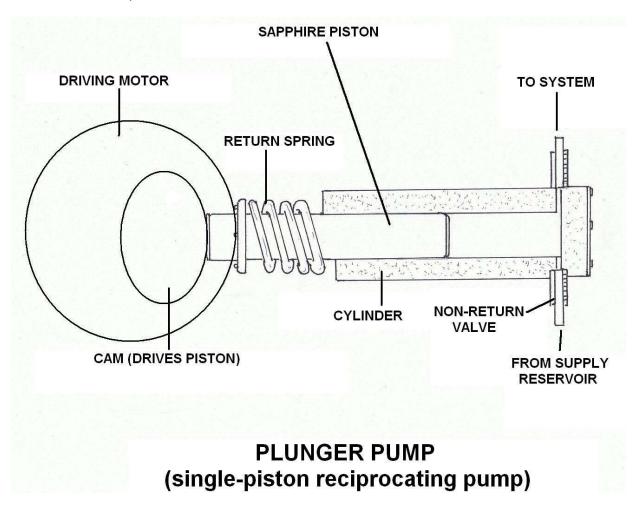
- ✓ Plunger pumps a reciprocating plunger pushes the fluid through one or two open valves, closed by suction on the way back.
- ✓ Diaphragm pumps similar to plunger pumps, where the plunger pressurizes hydraulic oil which is used to flex a diaphragm in the pumping cylinder. Diaphragm valves are used to pump hazardous and toxic fluids.
- ✓ Piston displacement pumps usually simple devices for pumping small amounts of liquid or gel manually. An example is the common hand soap pump.
- √ Radial piston pump

### **Various Positive Displacement Pumps**

The positive displacement principle applies in the following types of pumps:

- ✓ Rotary lobe pump
- ✓ Progressive cavity pump
- ✓ Rotary gear pump
- ✓ Piston pump
- ✓ Diaphragm pump

- ✓ Screw pump
- ✓ Gear pump
- √ Hydraulic pump
- √ Vane pump
- √ Regenerative (peripheral) pump
- ✓ Peristaltic pump
- ✓ Rope pump
- √ Flexible impeller



# **Centrifugal or Roto-Dynamic Pump**

The centrifugal or roto-dynamic pump produce a head and a flow by increasing the velocity of the liquid through the machine with the help of a rotating vane impeller. Centrifugal pumps include radial, axial and mixed flow units.

#### Centrifugal pumps can further be classified as

- ✓ end suction pumps
- √ in-line pumps
- √ double suction pumps
- ✓ vertical multistage pumps
- √ horizontal multistage pumps
- √ submersible pumps
- ✓ self-priming pumps
- ✓ axial-flow pumps
- ✓ regenerative pumps

The fact of the matter is that there are three types of problems mostly encountered with centrifugal pumps:

- √ design errors
- √ poor operation
- ✓ poor maintenance practices

#### **Working Mechanism of a Centrifugal Pump**

A centrifugal pump is one of the simplest pieces of equipment in any process plant. Its purpose is to convert energy of a prime mover (an electric motor or turbine) first into velocity or kinetic energy and then into pressure energy of a fluid that is being pumped. The energy changes occur by virtue of two main parts of the pump, the impeller and the volute or diffuser. The impeller is the rotating part that converts driver energy into the kinetic energy. The volute or diffuser is the stationary part that converts the kinetic energy into pressure energy.

**Note:** All of the forms of energy involved in a liquid flow system are expressed in terms of feet of liquid i.e. head.

#### **Generation of Centrifugal Force**

The process liquid enters the suction nozzle and then into eye (center) of a revolving device known as an impeller. When the impeller rotates, it spins the liquid sitting in the cavities between the vanes outward and provides centrifugal acceleration. As liquid leaves the eye of the impeller a low-pressure area is created causing more liquid to flow toward the inlet. Because the impeller blades are curved, the fluid is pushed in a tangential and radial direction by the centrifugal force. This force acting inside the pump is the same one that keeps water inside a bucket that is rotating at the end of a string.

#### **Selecting between Centrifugal or Positive Displacement Pumps**

Selecting between a Centrifugal Pump or a Positive Displacement Pump is not always straight forward.

#### Flow Rate and Pressure Head

The two types of pumps behave very differently regarding pressure head and flow rate: The Centrifugal Pump has varying flow depending on the system pressure or head. The Positive Displacement Pump has more or less a constant flow regardless of the system pressure or head. Positive Displacement pumps generally gives more pressure than Centrifugal Pump's. Depending on how the measurement is taken suction lift and head may also be referred to as static or dynamic. Static indicates the measurement does not take into account the friction caused by water moving through the hose or pipes. Dynamic indicates that losses due to friction are factored into the performance. The following terms are usually used when referring to lift or head.

Static Suction Lift - The vertical distance from the water line to the centerline of the impeller.

**Static Discharge Head** - The vertical distance from the discharge outlet to the point of discharge or liquid level when discharging into the bottom of a water tank.

**Dynamic Suction Head** - The Static Suction Lift plus the friction in the suction line. Also referred to as a Total Suction Head.

**Dynamic Discharge Head** - The Static Discharge Head plus the friction in the discharge line. Also referred to as Total Discharge Head.

**Total Dynamic Head** - The Dynamic Suction Head plus the Dynamic Discharge Head. Also referred to as Total Head.

#### **Capacity and Viscosity**

Another major difference between the pump types is the effect of viscosity on the capacity:

- ✓ In the Centrifugal Pump the flow is reduced when the viscosity is increased.
- ✓ In the Positive Displacement Pump the flow is increased when viscosity is increased

Liquids with high viscosity fills the clearances of a Positive Displacement Pump causing a higher volumetric efficiency and a Positive Displacement Pump is better suited for high viscosity applications. A Centrifugal Pump becomes very inefficient at even modest viscosity.

#### **Mechanical Efficiency**

The pumps behaves different considering mechanical efficiency as well.

- ✓ Changing the system pressure or head has little or no effect on the flow rate in the Positive Displacement Pump.
- ✓ Changing the system pressure or head has a dramatic effect on the flow rate in the Centrifugal Pump.

#### **Net Positive Suction Head - NPSH**

Another consideration is the Net Positive Suction Head NPSH.

- ✓ In a Centrifugal Pump, NPSH varies as a function of flow determined by pressure.
- ✓ In a Positive Displacement Pump, NPSH varies as a function of flow determined by speed. Reducing the speed of the Positive Displacement Pump, reduces the NPSH.

# **Darcy-Weisbach Formula**

#### Flow of fluid through a pipe

The flow of liquid through a pipe is resisted by viscous shear stresses within the liquid and the turbulence that occurs along the internal walls of the pipe, created by the roughness of the pipe material. This resistance is usually known as pipe friction and is measured is feet or meters head of the fluid, thus the term head loss is also used to express the resistance to flow.

Many factors affect the head loss in pipes, the viscosity of the fluid being handled, the size of the pipes, the roughness of the internal surface of the pipes, the changes in elevations within the system and the length of travel of the fluid. The resistance through various valves and fittings will also contribute to the overall head loss. A method to model the resistances for valves and fittings is described elsewhere. In a well-designed system the resistance through valves and fittings will be of minor significance to the overall head loss, many designers choose to ignore the head loss for valves and fittings at least in the initial stages of a design.

Much research has been carried out over many years and various formulas to calculate head loss have been developed based on experimental data. Among these is the Chézy formula which dealt with water flow in open channels. Using the concept of 'wetted perimeter' and the internal diameter of a pipe the Chézy formula could be adapted to estimate the head loss in a pipe, although the constant 'C' had to be determined experimentally.

#### The Darcy-Weisbach equation

Weisbach first proposed the equation we now know as the Darcy-Weisbach formula or Darcy-Weisbach equation:

```
hf = f (L/D) x (v2/2g)

where:
hf = head loss (m)
f = friction factor
L = length of pipe work (m)
d = inner diameter of pipe work (m)
v = velocity of fluid (m/s)
g = acceleration due to gravity (m/s²)

or:
hf = head loss (ft)
f = friction factor
L = length of pipe work (ft)
d = inner diameter of pipe work (ft)
v = velocity of fluid (ft/s)
g = acceleration due to gravity (ft/s²)
```

#### **The Moody Chart**

In 1944 LF Moody plotted the data from the Colebrook equation and this chart which is now known as 'The Moody Chart' or sometimes the Friction Factor Chart, enables a user to plot the Reynolds number and the Relative Roughness of the pipe and to establish a reasonably accurate value of the friction factor for turbulent flow conditions.

The Moody Chart encouraged the use of the Darcy-Weisbach friction factor and this quickly became the method of choice for hydraulic engineers. Many forms of head loss calculator were developed to assist with the calculations, amongst these a round slide rule offered calculations for flow in pipes on one side and flow in open channels on the reverse side.

The development of the personnel computer from the 1980's onwards reduced the time needed to perform the friction factor and head loss calculations, which in turn has widened the use of the Darcy-Weisbach formula to the point that all other formula are now largely unused.

This dimensionless chart is used to work out pressure drop,  $\Delta P(Pa)$  (or head loss,  $h_f(m)$ ) and flow rate through pipes. Head loss can be calculated using the Darcy–Weisbach equation:

$$h_{\rm f} = f \frac{l}{d} \frac{V^2}{2g};$$

not to be confused with the Fanning equation and the Fanning friction factor:

$$h_{\rm f} = 4f \frac{l}{d} \frac{V^2}{2g},$$

which uses a friction-factor equal to one fourth the Darcy-Weisbach friction factor. Pressure drop can then be evaluated as:

$$\Delta P = \rho \, g \, h_{\rm for \; directly \; from} \, \Delta P = f \frac{\rho V^2}{2} \frac{l}{d},$$

where P is the density of the fluid, V is the average velocity in the pipe, f is the friction factor from the Moody chart, I is the length of the pipe and I is the pipe diameter.

The basic chart plots Darcy–Weisbach friction factor against Reynolds number for a variety of relative roughnesses and flow regimes. The relative roughness being the ratio of the mean

height of roughness of the pipe to the pipe diameter or  $\overline{d}$ .

The Moody chart can be divided into two regimes of flow: laminar and turbulent. For the laminar flow regime, the Darcy–Weisbach friction factor was determined analytically by

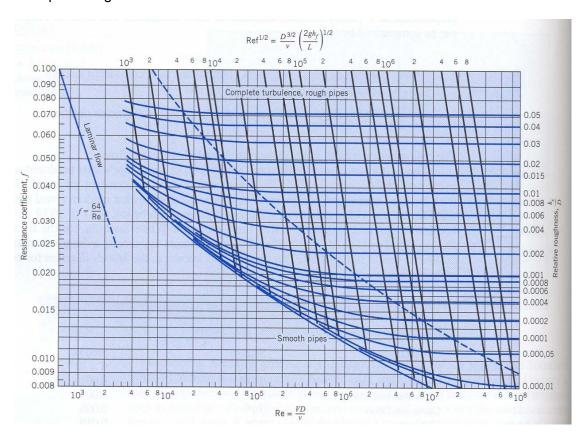
64

Poiseuille and Re is used. In this regime roughness has no discernible effect. For the turbulent flow regime, the relationship between the friction factor and the Reynolds number is more complex and is governed by the Colebrook equation which is implicit in f:

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{f}} = -2.0 \log_{10} \left( \frac{\frac{\epsilon}{d}}{3.7} + \frac{2.51}{Re\sqrt{f}} \right)$$
, turbulent flow.

In 1944, Lewis Ferry Moody plotted the Darcy–Weisbach friction factor into what is now known as the Moody chart.

The Fanning friction factor is 1/4 the Darcy–Weisbach one and the equation for pressure drop has a compensating factor of four.



# **Understanding Pump Vapor Pressure and Temperature**

The boiling point is the temperature at which the liquid changes to the gaseous state. This point depends on external pressure. The normal boiling point is defined when the external pressure over the liquid = 1 atm.

#### Think about this:

What is the boiling point of water? What does it depend on?

Water boils at 100 degrees C at one atm external pressure (sea level). As the pressure is lowered, the boiling point is reduced.

Also, as the external pressure drops, the temperature where the vapor pressure = the external pressure, is lower.

The table shows the relationship between vapor pressure and temperature. Vapor pressure increases with an increase in temperature.

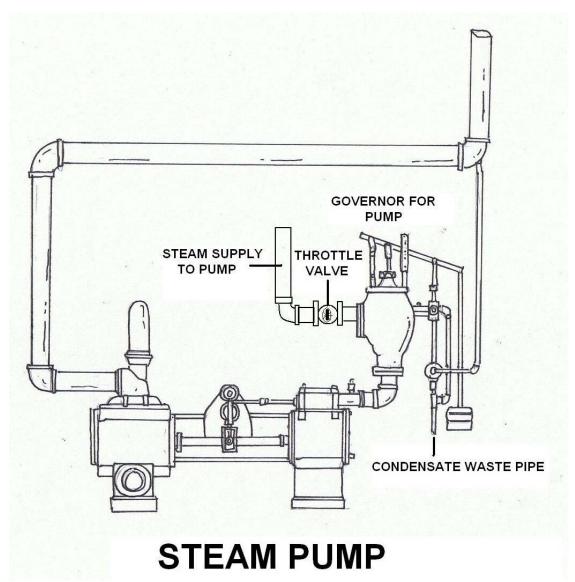
Temperature (°C)	Vapor Pressure (Torr)
100	760
50	93
20	17.5
0	5.5 (sublimation from ice)

#### **Critical Temperature**

Is there a point at which the gas can become a vapor and condense when the pressure increases?

#### Let's use Boyle's Law to explain.

Boyle's Law states that for a fixed amount of gas (n) at a constant temperature (T), the pressure (P) is inversely proportional to its volume (V). If the volume of the gas decreases, the pressure of the gas increases proportionally. This holds true because of the compressibility property of gases. But what if the volume of a gas were to decrease and in the process the gas condenses into liquid droplets? In such a situation, the saturated vapor pressure of the gas has been reached and the gas is now considered a vapor.



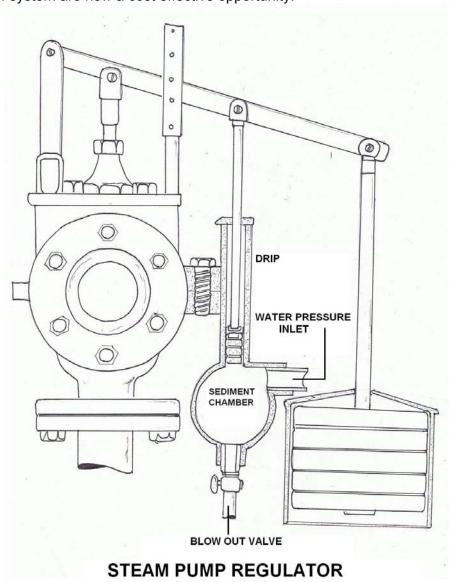
# **Steam Pumps**

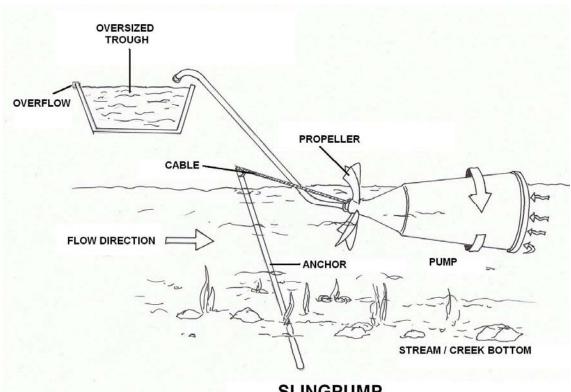
Steam pumps have been for a long time mainly of historical interest. They include any type of pump powered by a steam engine and also pistonless pumps such as Thomas Savery's, the Pulsometer steam pump or the Steam injection pump.

This extremely simple pump was made of cast iron, and had no pistons, rods, cylinders, cranks, or flywheels. It operated by the direct action of steam on water. The mechanism consisted of two chambers. As the steam condensed in one chamber, it acted as a suction pump, while in the other chamber, steam was introduced under pressure and so it acted as a force pump. At the end of every stroke, a ball valve consisting of a small rubber ball moved slightly, causing the two chambers to swap functions from suction-pump to force-pump and vice versa. The result was that the water was first suction pumped and then force pumped. The pump ran automatically without attendance.

It was praised for its "extreme simplicity of construction, operation, compact form, high efficiency, economy, durability, and adaptability". Later designs were improved upon to enhance efficiency and to make the machine more accessible for inspection and repairs, thus reducing maintenance costs.

Recently there has been a resurgence of interest in low power solar steam pumps for use in smallholder irrigation in developing countries. Previously small steam engines have not been viable because of escalating inefficiencies as vapor engines decrease in size. However the use of modern engineering materials coupled with alternative engine configurations has meant that these types of system are now a cost effective opportunity.





SLINGPUMP

# Sling Pump

A sling pump is powered by flowing water or wind. It floats on top of the water and is anchored in the water. A water powered pump is driven by water flowing past the pump. This rotates the propellers and will pump 24 hr/day. A water flow velocity of 2 ft/sec is necessary. A wind powered sling pump is often used where there is little water flow such as in a pond. It sits on 2 pontoons for floatation, but is anchored. Power is moved from the propellers to a belt that rotates the pump. A holding is used to store water for use in low wind periods. The minimum depth of water required is 16 in. It will pump from 800 to 3,300 Imperial gallons per day. Floating debris such as leaves and branches can hinder the operation of a sling pump. Silt or sand can also plug water hoses.

The Sling Pump, with only one moving part, is a modern application of an Archimedes Snail Pump. A helical intake coil is wrapped around and around the inside surface of a cone. The coil is connected to an output tube via a water-lubricated swivel coupling at the extreme upstream side of the pump and is open at the downstream (fat) end. The downstream end of the cone has slats to let water in but keep debris out. A rope or pair of ropes holds it in place.

The pump floats partially submerged, being largely of plastic, with aluminum propeller blades and buoyant Styrofoam in the nose. With each revolution of the cone, the coil picks up air during the top portion of the cycle and water during the bottom portion. This causes a pulsed output, and also means the output water is highly oxygenated. The Rife Hydraulic Engine Mfg. Co., Inc. claims some models of their Sling Pumps (inset) can raise water over 80 feet high or move it a mile horizontally, from a stream moving at just 1.5 feet per second. (Head doesn't change with speed, only volume.) The unit weighs about 44 lbs. and uses a 1/2" hose.

# **Submersible Pumps**

Submersible pumps are in essence very similar to turbine pumps. They both use impellers rotated by a shaft within the bowls to pump water. However, the pump portion is directly connected to the motor.

The pump shaft has a keyway in which the splined motor end shaft inserts. The motor is bolted to the pump housing. The pump's intake is located between the motor and the pump and is normally screened to prevent sediment from entering the pump and damaging the impellers.

The efficient cooling of submersible motors is very important, so these types of pumps are often installed such that flow through the well screen can occur upwards past the motor and into the intake. If the motor end is inserted below the screened interval or below all productive portions of the aquifer, it will not be cooled, resulting in premature motor failure.

Some pumps may have *pump shrouds* installed on them to force all the water to move past the motor to prevent overheating.

The shroud is a piece of pipe that attaches to the pump housing with an open end below the motor. As with turbine pumps, the size of the bowls and impellers, number of stages, and horsepower of the motor are adjusted to achieve the desired production rate within the limitations of the pumping head.





Insertion of motor spline into the pump keyway.

Cut away of a small submersible pump.

# **Valveless Pumps**

Valveless pumping assists in fluid transport in various biomedical and engineering systems. In a valveless pumping system, no valves are present to regulate the flow direction. The fluid pumping efficiency of a valveless system, however, is not necessarily lower than that having valves. In fact, many fluid-dynamical systems in nature and engineering more or less rely upon valveless pumping to transport the working fluids therein. For instance, blood circulation in the cardiovascular system is maintained to some extent even when the heart's valves fail. Meanwhile, the embryonic vertebrate heart begins pumping blood long before the development of discernible chambers and valves. In microfluidics, valveless impedance pumps have been fabricated, and are expected to be particularly suitable for handling sensitive biofluids.

Multiphase pumping applications also referred to as tri-phase, have grown due to increased oil drilling activity. In addition, the economics of multiphase production is attractive to upstream operations as it leads to simpler, smaller in-field installations, reduced equipment costs and improved production rates. In essence, the multiphase pump can accommodate all fluid stream properties with one piece of equipment, which has a smaller footprint. Often, two smaller multiphase pumps are installed in series rather than having just one massive pump.

For midstream and upstream operations, multiphase pumps can be located onshore or offshore and can be connected to single or multiple wellheads. Basically, multiphase pumps are used to transport the untreated flow stream produced from oil wells to downstream processes or gathering facilities. This means that the pump may handle a flow stream (well stream) from 100 percent gas to 100 percent liquid and every imaginable combination in between. The flow stream can also contain abrasives such as sand and dirt. Multiphase pumps are designed to operate under changing/fluctuating process conditions. Multiphase pumping also helps eliminate emissions of greenhouse gases as operators strive to minimize the flaring of gas and the venting of tanks where possible.

#### Types and Features of Multiphase Pumps

Helico-Axial Pumps (Centrifugal) A rotodynamic pump with one single shaft requiring two mechanical seals. This pump utilizes an open-type axial impeller. This pump type is often referred to as a "Poseidon Pump" and can be described as a cross between an axial compressor and a centrifugal pump.

#### 'Twin Screw (Positive Displacement)'

The twin screw pump is constructed of two intermeshing screws that force the movement of the pumped fluid. Twin screw pumps are often used when pumping conditions contain high gas volume fractions and fluctuating inlet conditions. Four mechanical seals are required to seal the two shafts.

#### **Progressive Cavity Pumps (Positive Displacement)**

Progressive cavity pumps are single-screw types typically used in shallow wells or at the surface. This pump is mainly used on surface applications where the pumped fluid may contain a considerable amount of solids such as sand and dirt.

#### **Electric Submersible Pumps (Centrifugal)**

These pumps are basically multistage centrifugal pumps and are widely used in oil well applications as a method for artificial lift. These pumps are usually specified when the pumped fluid is mainly liquid.

#### **Buffer Tank**

A buffer tank is often installed upstream of the pump suction nozzle in case of a slug flow. The buffer tank breaks the energy of the liquid slug, smoothes any fluctuations in the incoming flow and acts as a sand trap. As the name indicates, multiphase pumps and their mechanical seals can encounter a large variation in service conditions such as changing process fluid composition, temperature variations, high and low operating pressures and exposure to abrasive/erosive media. The challenge is selecting the appropriate mechanical seal arrangement and support system to ensure maximized seal life and its overall effectiveness.

### **Types of Positive Displacement Pumps**

Positive-displacement pumps are another category of pumps. Types of positive-displacement pumps are reciprocating, metering, and rotary pumps. Positive-displacement pumps operate by forcing a fixed volume of fluid from the inlet pressure section of the pump into the discharge zone of the pump. These pumps generally tend to be larger than equal-capacity dynamic pumps. Positive-displacement pumps frequently are used in hydraulic systems at pressures ranging up to 5000 psi. A principal advantage of hydraulic power is the high power density (power per unit weight) that can be achieved. They also provide a fixed displacement per revolution and, within mechanical limitations, infinite pressure to move fluids.

A positive displacement pump causes a fluid to move by trapping a fixed amount of it then forcing (displacing) that trapped volume into the discharge pipe.

#### or

A positive displacement pump has an expanding cavity on the suction side and a decreasing cavity on the discharge side. Liquid flows into the pump as the cavity on the suction side expands and the liquid flows out of the discharge as the cavity collapses. The volume is constant given each cycle of operation.

A positive displacement pump can be further classified according to the mechanism used to move the fluid:

• Rotary-type, internal gear, screw, shuttle block, flexible vane or sliding vane, circumferential piston, helical twisted roots (e.g. the Wendelkolben pump) or liquid ring vacuum pumps. Positive displacement rotary pumps are pumps that move fluid using the principles of rotation. The vacuum created by the rotation of the pump captures and draws in the liquid. Rotary pumps are very efficient because they naturally remove air from the lines, eliminating the need to bleed the air from the lines manually.

Positive displacement rotary pumps also have their weaknesses. Because of the nature of the pump, the clearance between the rotating pump and the outer edge must be very close, requiring that the pumps rotate at a slow, steady speed. If rotary pumps are operated at high speeds, the fluids will cause erosion. Rotary pumps that experience such erosion eventually show signs of enlarged clearances, which allow liquid to slip through and detract from the efficiency of the pump.

Positive displacement rotary pumps can be grouped into three main types. Gear pumps are the simplest type of rotary pumps, consisting of two gears laid out side-by-side with their teeth enmeshed. The gears turn away from each other, creating a current that traps fluid between the teeth on the gears and the outer casing, eventually releasing the fluid on the discharge side of the pump as the teeth mesh and go around again. Many small teeth maintain a constant flow of fluid, while fewer, larger teeth create a tendency for the pump to discharge fluids in short, pulsing gushes.

#### **Screw Pumps**

Screw pumps are a more complicated type of rotary pumps, featuring two or three screws with opposing thread —that is, one screw turns clockwise, and the other counterclockwise. The screws are each mounted on shafts that run parallel to each other; the shafts also have gears on them that mesh with each other in order to turn the shafts together and keep everything in place. The turning of the screws, and consequently the shafts to which they are mounted, draws the fluid through the pump. As with other forms of rotary pumps, the clearance between moving parts and the pump's casing is minimal.

#### **Moving Vane Pumps**

Moving vane pumps are the third type of rotary pumps, consisting of a cylindrical rotor encased in a similarly shaped housing. As the rotor turns, the vanes trap fluid between the rotor and the casing, drawing the fluid through the pump.

• Reciprocating-type, for example, piston or diaphragm pumps.

Positive displacement pumps have an expanding cavity on the suction side and a decreasing cavity on the discharge side. Liquid flows into the pumps as the cavity on the suction side expands and the liquid flows out of the discharge as the cavity collapses. The volume is constant given each cycle of operation. In a reciprocating pump, a volume of liquid is drawn into the cylinder through the suction valve on the intake stroke and is discharged under positive pressure through the outlet valves on the discharge stroke. The discharge from a reciprocating pump is pulsating and changes only when the speed of the pump is changed. This is because the intake is always a constant volume. Often an air chamber is connected on the discharge side of the pump to provide a more even flow by evening out the pressure surges. Reciprocating pumps are often used for sludge and slurry.

One construction style of a reciprocating pump is the direct-acting steam pump. These consist of a steam cylinder end in line with a liquid cylinder end, with a straight rod connection between the steam piston and the pump piston or plunger. These pistons are double acting which means that each side pumps on every stroke.

Another construction style is the power pump which converts rotary motion to low speed reciprocating motion using a speed reducing gear. The power pump can be either single or double-acting. A single-acting design discharges liquid only on one side of the piston or plunger. Only one suction and one discharge stroke per revolution of the crankshaft can occur.

The double-acting design takes suction and discharges on both sides of the piston resulting in two suctions and discharges per crankshaft revolution. Power pumps are generally very efficient and can develop high pressures. These pumps do however tend to be expensive.

#### The positive displacement pumps can be divided into two main classes

- reciprocating
- rotary

### The positive displacement principle applies whether the pump is a

- rotary lobe pump
- Progressive cavity pump
- rotary gear pump
- piston pump
- diaphragm pump
- screw pump
- gear pump
- Hydraulic pump
- vane pump
- regenerative (peripheral) pump
- peristaltic pump

Positive displacement pumps, unlike centrifugal or roto-dynamic pumps, will produce the same flow at a given speed (RPM) no matter what the discharge pressure.

• Positive displacement pumps are "constant flow machines"

A positive displacement pump must not be operated against a closed valve on the discharge side of the pump because it has no shut-off head like centrifugal pumps. A positive displacement pump operating against a closed discharge valve, will continue to produce flow until the pressure in the discharge line are increased until the line bursts or the pump is severely damaged - or both.

A relief or safety valve on the discharge side of the positive displacement pump is therefore necessary. The relief valve can be internal or external. The pump manufacturer normally has the option to supply internal relief or safety valves. The internal valve should in general only be used as a safety precaution, an external relief valve installed in the discharge line with a return line back to the suction line or supply tank is recommended.

#### **Metering Pumps**

Metering pumps provide precision control of very low flow rates. Flow rates are generally less than 1/2 gallon per minute. They are usually used to control additives to the main flow stream. They are also called proportioning or controlled-volume pumps. Metering pumps are available in either a diaphragm or packed plunger style, and are designed for clean service and dirty liquid can easily clog the valves and nozzle connections.

# **Glossary**

## Α

**Absolute Pressure:** The pressure above zone absolute, i.e. the sum of atmospheric and gauge pressure. In vacuum related work it is usually expressed in millimeters of mercury. (mmHg).

**Aerodynamics:** The study of the flow of gases. The Ideal Gas Law - For a perfect or ideal gas the change in density is directly related to the change in temperature and pressure as expressed in the Ideal Gas Law.

**Aeronautics:** The mathematics and mechanics of flying objects, in particular airplanes.

**Air Break:** A physical separation which may be a low inlet into the indirect waste receptor from the fixture, or device that is indirectly connected. You will most likely find an air break on waste fixtures or on non-potable lines. You should never allow an air break on an ice machine.

**Air Gap Separation:** A physical separation space that is present between the discharge vessel and the receiving vessel, for an example, a kitchen faucet.

**Altitude-Control Valve:** If an overflow occurs on a storage tank, the operator should first check the altitude-control valve. Altitude-Control Valve is designed to, 1. Prevent overflows from the storage tank or reservoir, or 2. Maintain a constant water level as long as water pressure in the distribution system is adequate.

**Angular Motion Formulas:** Angular velocity can be expressed as (angular velocity = constant):

```
\omega = \theta / t (2a)
                    where
                    \omega= angular velocity (rad/s)
                    \theta = angular displacement (rad)
                    t = time(s)
Angular velocity can be expressed as (angular acceleration = constant):
                    \omega = \omega_o + \alpha t (2b)
                     where
                    \omega_{o} = angular velocity at time zero (rad/s)
                    \alpha = angular acceleration (rad/s<sup>2</sup>)
Angular displacement can be expressed as (angular acceleration = constant):
                     \theta = \omega_0 t + 1/2 \alpha t^2 (2c)
                    Combining 2a and 2c:
                     \omega = (\omega_0^2 + 2 \alpha \theta)^{1/2}
Angular acceleration can be expressed as:
                    \alpha = d\omega / dt = d^2\theta / dt^2 (2d)
                     d\theta = change of angular displacement (rad)
                     dt = change in time (s)
```

**Atmospheric Pressure:** Pressure exerted by the atmosphere at any specific location. (Sea level pressure is approximately 14.7 pounds per square inch absolute, 1 bar = 14.5psi.)

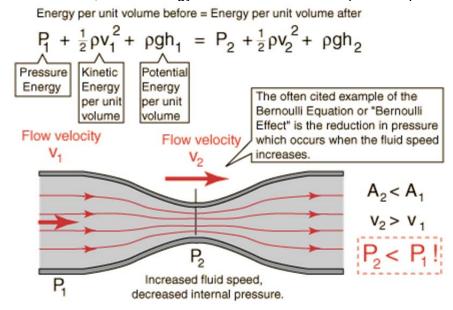
#### В

**Backflow Prevention:** To stop or prevent the occurrence of, the unnatural act of reversing the normal direction of the flow of liquid, gases, or solid substances back in to the public potable (drinking) water supply. See Cross-connection control.

**Backflow:** To reverse the natural and normal directional flow of a liquid, gases, or solid substances back in to the public potable (drinking) water supply. This is normally an undesirable effect.

**Backsiphonage:** A liquid substance that is carried over a higher point. It is the method by which the liquid substance may be forced by excess pressure over or into a higher point. Is a condition in which the pressure in the distribution system is less than atmospheric pressure. In other words, something is "sucked" into the system because the main is under a vacuum.

**Bernoulli's Equation:** Describes the behavior of moving fluids along a streamline. The Bernoulli Equation can be considered to be a statement of the conservation of energy principle appropriate for flowing fluids. The qualitative behavior that is usually labeled with the term "**Bernoulli effect**" is the lowering of fluid pressure in regions where the flow velocity is increased. This lowering of pressure in a constriction of a flow path may seem counterintuitive, but seems less so when you consider pressure to be energy density. In the high velocity flow through the constriction, kinetic energy must increase at the expense of pressure energy.



A special form of the Euler's equation derived along a fluid flow streamline is often called the **Bernoulli Equation.** 

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial s} \left( \frac{v^2}{2} + \frac{p}{\rho} + g \cdot h \right) = 0 \tag{1}$$

where

v =flow speed

p = pressure

 $\rho$  = density

g = gravity

h = height

$$\frac{v^2}{2} + \frac{p}{\rho} + g \cdot h = \text{Constant}$$
 (2)

$$\frac{v^2}{2 \cdot g} + \frac{p}{\gamma} + h = \text{Constant} \qquad (3)$$

where

 $\gamma = \rho \cdot g$ 

$$\frac{\rho \cdot v^2}{2} + p = \text{Constant}$$
 (4)

$$\frac{\rho \cdot v^2}{2} = p_d \tag{5}$$

$$\frac{\rho \cdot v_1^2}{2} + p_1 = \frac{\rho \cdot v_2^2}{2} + p_2 = \text{Constant}$$
 (6)

www.engineeringtoolbox.com

For steady state incompressible flow the Euler equation becomes (1). If we integrate (1) along the streamline it becomes (2). (2) can further be modified to (3) by dividing by gravity.

**Head of Flow:** Equation (3) is often referred to as the **head** because all elements have the unit of length.

# Bernoulli's Equation Continued:

#### **Dynamic Pressure**

(2) and (3) are two forms of the Bernoulli Equation for steady state incompressible flow. If we assume that the gravitational body force is negligible, (3) can be written as (4). Both elements in the equation have the unit of pressure and it's common to refer the flow velocity component as the **dynamic pressure** of the fluid flow (5).

Since energy is conserved along the streamline, (4) can be expressed as (6). Using the equation we see that increasing the velocity of the flow will reduce the pressure, decreasing the velocity will increase the pressure.

This phenomena can be observed in a **venturi meter** where the pressure is reduced in the constriction area and regained after. It can also be observed in a **pitot tube** where the **stagnation** pressure is measured. The stagnation pressure is where the velocity component is zero.

### Bernoulli's Equation Continued:

#### **Pressurized Tank**

If the tanks are pressurized so that product of gravity and height (g h) is much less than the pressure difference divided by the density, (e4) can be transformed to (e6). The velocity out from the tanks depends mostly on the pressure difference.

#### Example - outlet velocity from a pressurized tank

The outlet velocity of a pressurized tank where

$$p_1 = 0.2 \ MN/m^2$$
,  $p_2 = 0.1 \ MN/m^2 \ A_2/A_1 = 0.01$ ,  $h = 10 \ m$   
can be calculated as  $V_2 = [(2/(1-(0.01)^2) \ (\ (0.2-0.1)x10^6 \ /1x10^3 + 9.81 \ x \ 10)]^{1/2} = 19.9 \ m/s$ 

### **Coefficient of Discharge - Friction Coefficient**

Due to friction the real velocity will be somewhat lower than this theoretical example. If we introduce a **friction coefficient** c (coefficient of discharge), (e5) can be expressed as (e5b). The coefficient of discharge can be determined experimentally. For a sharp edged opening it may be as low as 0.6. For smooth orifices it may be between 0.95 and 1.

**Bingham Plastic Fluids:** Bingham Plastic Fluids have a yield value which must be exceeded before it will start to flow like a fluid. From that point the viscosity will decrease with increase of agitation. Toothpaste, mayonnaise and tomato catsup are examples of such products.

**Boundary Layer:** The layer of fluid in the immediate vicinity of a bounding surface.

**Bulk Modulus and Fluid Elasticity:** An introduction to and a definition of the Bulk Modulus Elasticity commonly used to characterize the compressibility of fluids.

The Bulk Modulus Elasticity can be expressed as

$$E = -dp/(dV/V) (1)$$

where

E = bulk modulus elasticity

dp = differential change in pressure on the object

dV = differential change in volume of the object

*V* = initial volume of the object

The Bulk Modulus Elasticity can be alternatively expressed as

$$E = -dp / (d\rho / \rho)$$
 (2)

where

do = differential change in density of the object

 $\rho$  = initial density of the object

An increase in the pressure will decrease the volume (1). A decrease in the volume will increase the density (2).

- The SI unit of the bulk modulus elasticity is N/m<sup>2</sup> (Pa)
- The imperial (BG) unit is lb<sub>f</sub>/in<sup>2</sup> (psi)

• 1  $lb_f/in^2$  (psi) = 6.894 10<sup>3</sup> N/m<sup>2</sup> (Pa)

A large Bulk Modulus indicates a relatively incompressible fluid.

Bulk Modulus for some common fluids can be found in the table below:

Bulk Modulus - E	Imperial Units - BG (psi, lb <sub>f</sub> /in <sup>2</sup> ) x 10 <sup>5</sup>	SI Units (Pa, N/m²) x 10 <sup>9</sup>
Carbon Tetrachloride	1.91	1.31
Ethyl Alcohol	1.54	1.06
Gasoline	1.9	1.3
Glycerin	6.56	4.52
Mercury	4.14	2.85
SAE 30 Oil	2.2	1.5
Seawater	3.39	2.35
Water	3.12	2.15

### C

**Capillarity:** (or capillary action) The ability of a narrow tube to draw a liquid upwards against the force of gravity.

The height of liquid in a tube due to capillarity can be expressed as

$$h = 2 \sigma \cos\theta / (\rho g r) (1)$$

where

h = height of liquid (ft, m)

 $\sigma$  = surface tension (lb/ft, N/m)

 $\theta$  = contact angle

 $\rho$  = density of liquid (lb/ft<sup>3</sup>, kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

g = acceleration due to gravity (32.174 ft/s<sup>2</sup>, 9.81 m/s<sup>2</sup>)

r = radius of tube (ft, m)

**Cauchy Number:** A dimensionless value useful for analyzing fluid flow dynamics problems where compressibility is a significant factor.

The Cauchy Number is the ratio between inertial and the compressibility force in a flow and can be expressed as

$$C = \rho v^2 / E$$
 (1)

where

 $\rho = density (kg/m^3)$ 

 $v = flow \ velocity \ (m/s)$ 

E = bulk modulus elasticity (N/m<sup>2</sup>)

The bulk modulus elasticity has the dimension pressure and is commonly used to characterize the compressibility of a fluid.

The Cauchy Number is the square root of the Mach Number  $M^2 = Ca$  (3)

where C = Mach Number

Cavitation: Under the wrong condition, cavitation will reduce the components life time dramatically. Cavitation may occur when the local static pressure in a fluid reach a level below the vapor pressure of the liquid at the actual temperature. According to the Bernoulli Equation this may happen when the fluid accelerates in a control valve or around a pump impeller. The vaporization itself does not cause the damage - the damage happens when the vapor almost immediately collapses after evaporation when the velocity is decreased and pressure increased. Cavitation means that cavities are forming in the liquid that we are pumping. When these cavities form at the suction of the pump several things happen all at once: We experience a loss in capacity. We can no longer build the same head (pressure). The efficiency drops. The cavities or bubbles will collapse when they pass into the higher regions of pressure causing noise, vibration, and damage to many of the components. The cavities form for five basic reasons and it is common practice to lump all of them into the general classification of cavitation.

This is an error because we will learn that to correct each of these conditions we must understand why they occur and how to fix them. Here they are in no particular order: Vaporization, Air ingestion, Internal recirculation, Flow turbulence and finally the Vane Passing Syndrome.

### **Avoiding Cavitation**

Cavitation can in general be avoided by:

• increasing the distance between the actual local static pressure in the fluid - and the vapor pressure of the fluid at the actual temperature

This can be done by:

- reengineering components initiating high speed velocities and low static pressures
- increasing the total or local static pressure in the system
- reducing the temperature of the fluid

Reengineering of Components Initiating High Speed Velocity and Low Static Pressure Cavitation and damage can be avoided by using special components designed for the actual rough conditions.

- Conditions such as huge pressure drops can with limitations be handled by Multi Stage Control Valves
- Difficult pumping conditions with fluid temperatures close to the vaporization temperature can be handled with a special pump - working after another principle than the centrifugal pump.

#### Cavitation Continued: Increasing the Total or Local Pressure in the System

By increasing the total or local pressure in the system, the distance between the static pressure and the vaporization pressure is increased and vaporization and cavitation may be avoided.

The ratio between static pressure and the vaporization pressure, an indication of the possibility of vaporization, is often expressed by the Cavitation Number. Unfortunately it may not always be possible to increase the total static pressure due to system classifications or other limitations. Local static pressure in the component may then be increased by lowering the component in the system. Control valves and pumps should in general be positioned in the lowest part of the system to maximize the static head. This is common for boiler feeding pumps receiving hot condensate (water close to 100 °C) from a condensate receiver.

## Cavitation Continued: Reducing the Temperature of the Fluid

The vaporization pressure is highly dependent on the fluid temperature. Water, our most common fluid, is an example:

Temperature (°C)	Vapor Pressure (kN/m²)
0	0.6
5	0.9
10	1.2
15	1.7
20	2.3
25	3.2
30	4.3
35	5.6
40	7.7
45	9.6
50	12.5
55	15.7
60	20
65	25
70	32.1
75	38.6
80	47.5
85	57.8
90	70
95	84.5
100	101.33

As we can see - the possibility of evaporation and cavitation increases dramatically with the water temperature.

Cavitation can be avoided by locating the components in the coldest part of the system. For example, it is common to locate the pumps in heating systems at the "cold" return lines. The situation is the same for control valves. Where it is possible they should be located on the cold side of heat exchangers.

**Cavitations Number:** A "special edition" of the dimensionless Euler Number.

The Cavitations Number is useful for analyzing fluid flow dynamics problems where cavitations may occur. The Cavitations Number can be expressed as

Ca = 
$$(p_r - p_v) / 1/2 \rho v^2 (1)$$

where

Ca = Cavitations number

 $p_r$  = reference pressure

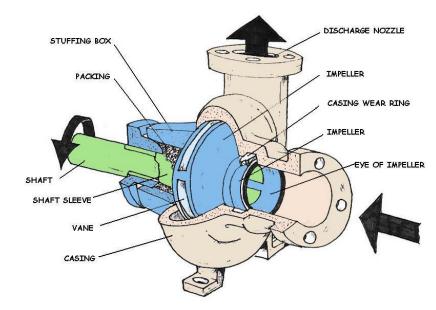
(Pa)

 $p_v$  = vapor pressure of the

fluid (Pa)  $\rho$  = density of the fluid

 $(kg/m^3)$ v = velocity of fluid (m/s)

Centrifugal Pump: A pump consisting of an impeller fixed on a rotating shaft and enclosed in a casing, having an inlet and a discharge connection. The rotating impeller creates pressure in the liquid by the velocity derived from centrifugal force.



**Chezy Formula:** Conduits flow and mean velocity. The Chezy

formula can be used to calculate mean flow velocity in conduits and is expressed as

$$v = c (R S)^{1/2} (1)$$

where

 $v = mean \ velocity \ (m/s, ft/s)$ 

c = the Chezy roughness and conduit coefficient

R = hydraulic radius of the conduit (m, ft)

S = slope of the conduit (m/m, ft/ft)

In general the Chezy coefficient - c - is a function of the flow Reynolds Number - Re - and the relative roughness -  $\varepsilon/R$  - of the channel.

 $\varepsilon$  is the characteristic height of the roughness elements on the channel boundary.

**Coanda Effect:** The tendency of a stream of fluid to stay attached to a convex surface, rather than follow a straight line in its original direction.

**Colebrook Equation:** The friction coefficients used to calculate pressure loss (or major loss) in ducts, tubes and pipes can be calculated with the Colebrook equation.

$$1/\lambda^{1/2} = -2 \log ((2.51/(\text{Re }\lambda^{1/2})) + ((k/d_h)/3.72)) (1)$$
  
where  $\lambda = D'Arcy-Weisbach$  friction coefficient  $Re = Reynolds$  Number  $k = roughness$  of duct, pipe or tube surface  $(m, ft)$   $d_h = hydraulic$  diameter  $(m, ft)$ 

The Colebrook equation is only valid at turbulent flow conditions.

Note that the friction coefficient is involved on both sides of the equation and that the equation must be solved by iteration.

The Colebrook equation is generic and can be used to calculate the friction coefficients in different kinds of fluid flows - air ventilation ducts, pipes and tubes with water or oil, compressed air and much more.

**Common Pressure Measuring Devices:** The Strain Gauge is a common measuring device used for a variety of changes such as head. As the pressure in the system changes, the diaphragm expands which changes the length of the wire attached. This change of length of the wire changes the Resistance of the wire, which is then converted to head. Float mechanisms, diaphragm elements, bubbler tubes, and direct electronic sensors are common types of level sensors.

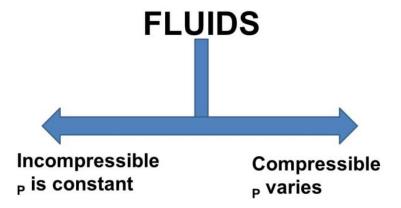
Compressible Flow: We know that fluids are classified as Incompressible and Compressible fluids. Incompressible fluids do not undergo significant changes in density as they flow. In general, liquids are incompressible; water being an excellent example. In contrast compressible fluids do undergo density changes. Gases are generally compressible; air being the most common compressible fluid we can find. Compressibility of gases leads to many interesting features such as shocks, which are absent for incompressible fluids. Gas dynamics is the discipline that studies the flow of compressible fluids and forms an important branch of Fluid Mechanics. In this book we give a broad introduction to the basics of compressible fluid flow.

In a compressible flow the compressibility of the fluid must be taken into account. The Ideal Gas Law - For a perfect or ideal gas the change in density is directly related to the change in temperature and pressure as expressed in the Ideal Gas Law. Properties of **Gas Mixtures** - Special care must be taken for gas mixtures when using the ideal gas law, calculating the mass, the individual gas constant or the density. The Individual and **Universal Gas Constant** - The Individual and **Universal Gas Constant** is common in fluid mechanics and thermodynamics.

**Compression and Expansion of Gases:** If the compression or expansion takes place under constant temperature conditions - the process is called **isothermal**. The isothermal process can on the basis of the Ideal Gas Law be expressed as:

 $\rho/\rho$  = constant (1)

where p = absolute pressure ρ = density



**Confined Space Entry:** Entry into a confined space requires that all entrants wear a harness and safety line. If an operator is working inside a storage tank and suddenly faints or has a serious problem, there should be two people outside standing by to remove the injured operator.

**Conservation Laws:** The conservation laws states that particular measurable properties of an isolated physical system does not change as the system evolves: Conservation of energy (including mass). Fluid Mechanics and Conservation of Mass - The law of conservation of mass states that mass can neither be created or destroyed.

**Contaminant:** Any natural or man-made physical, chemical, biological, or radiological substance or matter in water, which is at a level that may have an adverse effect on public health, and which is known or anticipated to occur in public water systems.

**Contamination:** To make something bad; to pollute or infect something. To reduce the quality of the potable (drinking) water and create an actual hazard to the water supply by poisoning or through spread of diseases.

**Corrosion:** The removal of metal from copper, other metal surfaces and concrete surfaces in a destructive manner. Corrosion is caused by improperly balanced water or excessive water velocity through piping or heat exchangers.

**Cross-Contamination:** The mixing of two unlike qualities of water. For example, the mixing of good water with a polluting substance like a chemical.

### D

**Darcy-Weisbach Equation:** The **pressure loss** (or major loss) in a pipe, tube or duct can be expressed with the D'Arcy-Weisbach equation:

$$\Delta p = \lambda (1/d_h) (\rho v^2/2) (1)$$

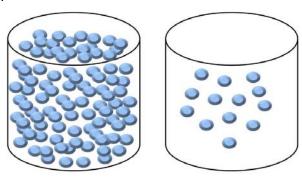
where

 $\Delta p$  = pressure loss (Pa, N/m², lb<sub>f</sub>/ft²)  $\lambda$  = D'Arcy-Weisbach friction coefficient I = length of duct or pipe (m, ft)  $d_n$  = hydraulic diameter (m, ft)  $\rho$  = density (kg/m³, lb/ft³)

**Note!** Be aware that there are two alternative friction coefficients present in the literature. One is 1/4 of the other and (1) must be multiplied with four to achieve the correct result. This is important to verify when selecting friction coefficients from Moody diagrams.

**Density:** Is a physical property of matter, as each element and compound has a unique density associated with it.

Density defined in a qualitative manner as the measure of the relative "heaviness" of objects with a constant volume. For example: A rock is obviously more dense than a crumpled piece of paper of the same size. A Styrofoam cup is less dense than a ceramic cup. Density may also refer to how closely "packed" or "crowded" the material appears to be - again refer to the Styrofoam vs. ceramic cup. Take a look at the two boxes below.



Each box has the same volume. *If each ball has the same mass, which box would weigh more? Why?* 

The box that has more balls has more mass per unit of volume. This property of matter is called density. The density of a material helps to distinguish it from other materials. Since mass is usually expressed in grams and volume in cubic centimeters, density is expressed in grams/cubic centimeter. We can calculate density using the formula:

### **Density= Mass/Volume**

The density can be expressed as

$$\rho = m / V = 1 / v_a(1)$$

```
where

\rho = density (kg/m^3)

m = mass (kg)

V = volume (m^3)

v_a = specific volume (m^3/kg)
```

The SI units for density are kg/m³. The imperial (BG) units are lb/ft³ (slugs/ft³). While people often use pounds per cubic foot as a measure of density in the U.S., pounds are really a measure of force, not mass. Slugs are the correct measure of mass. You can multiply slugs by 32.2 for a rough value in pounds. The higher the density, the tighter the particles are packed inside the substance. Density is a physical property constant at a given temperature and density can help to identify a substance.

### Example - Use the Density to Identify the Material:

An unknown liquid substance has a mass of 18.5 g and occupies a volume of 23.4 ml. (milliliter).

The density can be calculated as

```
\rho = [18.5 (g) / 1000 (g/kg)] / [23.4 (ml) / 1000 (ml/l) 1000 (l/m<sup>3</sup>)]
= 18.5 10<sup>-3</sup> (kg) / 23.4 10<sup>-6</sup> (m<sup>3</sup>)
= 790 kg/m<sup>3</sup>
```

If we look up densities of some common substances, we can find that ethyl alcohol, or ethanol, has a density of 790 kg/m<sup>3</sup>. Our unknown liquid may likely be ethyl alcohol!

#### Example - Use Density to Calculate the Mass of a Volume

The density of titanium is 4507 kg/m<sup>3</sup>. Calculate the mass of 0.17 m<sup>3</sup> titanium!

```
m = 0.17 (m^3) 4507 (kg/m^3)
= 766.2 kg
```

**Dilatant Fluids:** Shear Thickening Fluids **or** Dilatant Fluids increase their viscosity with agitation. Some of these liquids can become almost solid within a pump or pipe line. With agitation, cream becomes butter and Candy compounds, clay slurries and similar heavily filled liquids do the same thing.

**Disinfect:** To kill and inhibit growth of harmful bacterial and viruses in drinking water.

**Disinfection:** The treatment of water to inactivate, destroy, and/or remove pathogenic bacteria, viruses, protozoa, and other parasites.

**Distribution System Water Quality:** Can be adversely affected by improperly constructed or poorly located blowoffs of vacuum/air relief valves. Air relief valves in the distribution system lines must be placed in locations that cannot be flooded. This is to prevent water contamination. The common customer complaint of Milky Water or Entrained Air is sometimes solved by the installation of air relief valves. The venting of air is not a major concern when checking water levels in a storage tank. If the vent line on a ground level storage tank is closed or clogged up, a vacuum will develop in the tank may happen to the tank when the water level begins to lower.

**Drag Coefficient:** Used to express the drag of an object in moving fluid. Any object moving through a fluid will experience a drag - the net force in direction of flow due to the pressure and shear stress forces on the surface of the object.

The drag force can be expressed as:

```
F_d = c_d \ 1/2 \ \rho \ v^2 \ A \ (1)
where
F_d = drag \ force \ (N)
c_d = drag \ coefficient
\rho = density \ of \ fluid
v = flow \ velocity
A = characteristic \ frontal \ area \ of \ the \ body
```

The drag coefficient is a function of several parameters as shape of the body, Reynolds Number for the flow, Froude number, Mach Number and Roughness of the Surface. The characteristic frontal area - *A* - depends on the body.

**Dynamic or Absolute Viscosity:** The viscosity of a fluid is an important property in the analysis of liquid behavior and fluid motion near solid boundaries. The viscosity of a fluid is its resistance to shear or flow and is a measure of the adhesive/cohesive or frictional properties of a fluid. The resistance is caused by intermolecular friction exerted when layers of fluids attempts to slide by another.

**Dynamic Pressure:** Dynamic pressure is the component of fluid pressure that represents a fluids kinetic energy. The dynamic pressure is a defined property of a moving flow of gas or liquid and can be expressed as

```
p_d = 1/2 \rho v^2 (1)

where

p_d = dynamic pressure (Pa)

\rho = density of fluid (kg/m^3)

v = velocity (m/s)
```

**Dynamic, Absolute and Kinematic Viscosity:** The viscosity of a fluid is an important property in the analysis of liquid behavior and fluid motion near solid boundaries. The viscosity is the fluid resistance to shear or flow and is a measure of the adhesive/cohesive or frictional fluid property. The resistance is caused by intermolecular friction exerted when layers of fluids attempts to slide by another.

Viscosity is a measure of a fluid's resistance to flow.

The knowledge of viscosity is needed for proper design of required temperatures for storage, pumping or injection of fluids.

Common used units for viscosity are

- CentiPoises (cp) = CentiStokes (cSt) × Density
- SSU<sup>1</sup> = Centistokes (cSt) × 4.55
- Degree Engler<sup>1</sup> × 7.45 = Centistokes (cSt)
- Seconds Redwood<sup>1</sup> × 0.2469 = Centistokes (cSt)

There are two related measures of fluid viscosity - known as **dynamic** (**or absolute**) and **kinematic** viscosity.

**Dynamic (absolute) Viscosity:** The tangential force per unit area required to move one horizontal plane with respect to the other at unit velocity when maintained a unit distance apart by the fluid. The shearing stress between the layers of non-turbulent fluid moving in straight parallel lines can be defined for a Newtonian fluid as:

The dynamic or absolute viscosity can be expressed like

```
\tau = \mu \, dc/dy (1)
where
\tau = shearing \, stress
\mu = dynamic \, viscosity
```

Equation (1) is known as the **Newton's Law of Friction**.

In the SI system the dynamic viscosity units are N s/m<sup>2</sup>, Pa s or kg/m s where

• 1 Pa s = 1 N s/ $m^2$  = 1 kg/m s

The dynamic viscosity is also often expressed in the metric CGS (centimeter-gram-second) system as **g/cm.s**, **dyne.s/cm²** or **poise (p)** where

• 1 poise = dyne  $s/cm^2 = g/cm s = 1/10 Pa s$ 

For practical use the Poise is to large and its usual divided by 100 into the smaller unit called the **centiPoise (cP)** where

• 1 p = 100 cP

Water at 68.4°F (20.2°C) has an absolute viscosity of one - 1 - centiPoise.

### Ε

**E. Coli,** *Escherichia coli*: A bacterium commonly found in the human intestine. For water quality analyses purposes, it is considered an indicator organism. These are considered evidence of water contamination. Indicator organisms may be accompanied by pathogens, but do not necessarily cause disease themselves.

**Elevation Head:** The energy possessed per unit weight of a fluid because of its elevation. 1 foot of water will produce .433 pounds of pressure head.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>centistokes greater than 50

**Energy:** The ability to do work. Energy can exist in one of several forms, such as heat, light, mechanical, electrical, or chemical. Energy can be transferred to different forms. It also can exist in one of two states, either potential or kinetic.

**Energy and Hydraulic Grade Line:** The hydraulic grade and the energy line are graphical forms of the Bernoulli equation. For steady, in viscid, incompressible flow the total energy remains constant along a stream line as expressed through the Bernoulli

#### **Equation:**

```
p + 1/2 \rho v^2 + \gamma h = constant along a streamline (1)

where

p = static pressure (relative to the moving fluid)

\rho = density

\gamma = specific weight

v = flow velocity

g = acceleration of gravity

h = elevation height
```

Each term of this equation has the dimension force per unit area - psi, lb/ft<sup>2</sup> or N/m<sup>2</sup>.

#### The Head

By dividing each term with the specific weight -  $\gamma = \rho g$  - (1) can be transformed to express the "head":

```
p/\gamma + v^2/2 g + h = constant along a streamline = H (2) where H = the total head
```

Each term of this equation has the dimension length - ft, m.

#### The Total Head

(2) states that the sum of **pressure head** -  $p / \gamma$  -, **velocity head** -  $v^2 / 2g$  - and **elevation head** - h - is constant along the stream line. This constant can be called **the total head** - H -.

The total head in a flow can be measured by the stagnation pressure using a pitot tube.

### Energy and Hydraulic Grade Line Continued:

#### The Piezometric Head

The sum of pressure head -  $p/\gamma$  - and elevation head - h - is called **the piezometric head**. The piezometric head in a flow can be measured through an flat opening parallel to the flow.

### Energy and Hydraulic Grade Line Continued:

#### The Energy Line

The Energy Line is a line that represents the total head available to the fluid and can be expressed as:

$$EL = H = p / \gamma + v^2 / 2 g + h = constant along a streamline (3)$$
  
where  
 $EL = Energy Line$ 

For a fluid flow without any losses due to friction (major losses) or components (minor losses) the energy line would be at a constant level. In the practical world the energy line decreases along the flow due to the losses.

A turbine in the flow will reduce the energy line and a pump or fan will increase the energy line.

### The Hydraulic Grade Line

The Hydraulic Grade Line is a line that represent the total head available to the fluid minus the velocity head and can be expressed as:

```
HGL = p / \gamma + h (4)
where
HGL = Hydraulic Grade Line
```

The hydraulic grade line lies one velocity head below the energy line.

**Entrance Length and Developed Flow:** Fluids need some length to develop the velocity profile after entering the pipe or after passing through components such as bends, valves, pumps, and turbines or similar.

**The Entrance Length:** The entrance length can be expressed with the dimensionless Entrance Length Number:

```
EI = I_e / d (1)

where

EI = Entrance \ Length \ Number

I_e = length \ to \ fully \ developed \ velocity \ profile

d = tube \ or \ duct \ diameter
```

### The Entrance Length Number for Laminar Flow

The Entrance length number correlation with the Reynolds Number for laminar flow can be expressed as:

```
El<sub>laminar</sub> = 0.06 Re (2)
where
Re = Reynolds Number
```

#### The Entrance Length Number for Turbulent Flow

The Entrance length number correlation with the Reynolds Number for turbulent flow can be expressed as:

$$EI_{turbulent} = 4.4 \text{ Re}^{1/6} (3)$$

**Entropy in Compressible Gas Flow:** Calculating entropy in compressible gas flow Entropy change in compressible gas flow can be expressed as

```
ds = c_v \ln(T_2/T_1) + R \ln(\rho_1/\rho_2) (1)

or

ds = c_p \ln(T_2/T_1) - R \ln(\rho_2/\rho_1) (2)

where

ds = \text{entropy change}

c_v = \text{specific heat capacity at a constant volume process}

c_p = \text{specific heat capacity at a constant pressure process}

T = \text{absolute temperature}

R = \text{individual gas constant}

\rho = \text{density of gas}

p = \text{absolute pressure}
```

**Equation of Continuity:** The Law of Conservation of Mass states that mass can be neither created nor destroyed. Using the Mass Conservation Law on a **steady flow** process - flow where the flow rate doesn't change over time - through a control volume where the stored mass in the control volume doesn't change - implements that inflow equals outflow. This statement is called **the Equation of Continuity.** Common application where **the Equation of Continuity** can be used are pipes, tubes and ducts with flowing fluids and gases, rivers, overall processes as power plants, diaries, logistics in general, roads, computer networks and semiconductor technology and more.

The Equation of Continuity and can be expressed as:

```
m = \rho_{i1} v_{i1} A_{i1} + \rho_{i2} v_{i2} A_{i2} + ... + \rho_{in} v_{in} A_{im}
= \rho_{o1} v_{o1} A_{o1} + \rho_{o2} v_{o2} A_{o2} + ... + \rho_{om} v_{om} A_{om} (1)
where
m = mass flow rate (kg/s)
\rho = density (kg/m^3)
v = speed (m/s)
A = area (m^2)
With uniform density equation (1) can be modified to q = v_{i1} A_{i1} + v_{i2} A_{i2} + ... + v_{in} A_{im}
= v_{o1} A_{o1} + v_{o2} A_{o2} + ... + v_{om} A_{om} (2)
where
q = flow rate (m^3/s)
\rho_{i1} = \rho_{i2} = ... = \rho_{in} = \rho_{o1} = \rho_{o2} = ... = \rho_{om}
```

#### **Example - Equation of Continuity**

10 m³/h of water flows through a pipe of 100 mm inside diameter. The pipe is reduced to an inside dimension of 80 mm. Using equation (2) the velocity in the 100 mm pipe can be calculated as

```
(10 \text{ m}^3/\text{h})(1 / 3600 \text{ h/s}) = v_{100} (3.14 \times 0.1 \text{ (m)} \times 0.1 \text{ (m)} / 4)
or
v_{100} = (10 \text{ m}^3/\text{h})(1 / 3600 \text{ h/s}) / (3.14 \times 0.1 \text{ (m)} \times 0.1 \text{ (m)} / 4)
= 0.35 \text{ m/s}
Using equation (2) the velocity in the 80 mm pipe can be calculated
```

```
(10 \text{ m}^3/\text{h})(1 / 3600 \text{ h/s}) = v_{80} (3.14 \times 0.08 \text{ (m)} \times 0.08 \text{ (m)} / 4) or v_{100} = (10 \text{ m}^3/\text{h})(1 / 3600 \text{ h/s}) / (3.14 \times 0.08 \text{ (m)} \times 0.08 \text{ (m)} / 4) = 0.55 \text{ m/s}
```

**Equation of Mechanical Energy:** The Energy Equation is a statement of the first law of thermodynamics. The energy equation involves energy, heat transfer and work. With certain limitations the mechanical energy equation can be compared to the Bernoulli Equation and transferred to the Mechanical Energy Equation in Terms of Energy per Unit Mass.

The mechanical energy equation for a **pump or a fan** can be written in terms of **energy per unit mass**:

```
p_{in}/\rho + v_{in}^2/2 + g h_{in} + w_{shaft} = p_{out}/\rho + v_{out}^2/2 + g h_{out} + w_{loss} (1)

where

p = static \ pressure

p = density

v = flow \ velocity

g = acceleration \ of \ gravity

h = elevation \ height

w_{shaft} = net \ shaft \ energy \ inn \ per \ unit \ mass \ for \ a \ pump, \ fan \ or \ similar

w_{loss} = loss \ due \ to \ friction
```

The energy equation is often used for incompressible flow problems and is called **the Mechanical Energy Equation** or **the Extended Bernoulli Equation**.

The mechanical energy equation for a **turbine** can be written as:

$$p_{in}/\rho + v_{in}^2/2 + g h_{in} = p_{out}/\rho + v_{out}^2/2 + g h_{out} + w_{shaft} + w_{loss}$$
 (2)  
where  $w_{shaft} = net$  shaft energy out per unit mass for a turbine or similar

Equation (1) and (2) dimensions are energy per unit mass  $(ft^2/s^2 = ft lb/slug or m^2/s^2 = N m/kg)$ 

#### Efficiency

According to (1) a larger amount of loss -  $w_{loss}$  - result in more shaft work required for the same rise of output energy. The efficiency of a **pump or fan process** can be expressed as:

$$\eta = (w_{shaft} - w_{loss}) / w_{shaft}$$
 (3)

The efficiency of a **turbine process** can be expressed as:

$$\eta = W_{shaft} / (W_{shaft} + W_{loss}) (4)$$

#### The Mechanical Energy Equation in Terms of Energy per Unit Volume

The mechanical energy equation for a **pump or a fan** (1) can also be written in terms of **energy per unit volume** by multiplying (1) with fluid density -  $\rho$ :

$$p_{in} + \rho v_{in}^2 / 2 + \gamma h_{in} + \rho w_{shaft} = p_{out} + \rho v_{out}^2 / 2 + \gamma h_{out} + w_{loss}$$
 (5)  
where  $\gamma = \rho g = specific weight$ 

The dimensions of equation (5) are energy per unit volume (ft.lb/ft $^3$  = lb/ft $^2$  or N.m/m $^3$  = N/m $^2$ )

The Mechanical Energy Equation in Terms of Energy per Unit Weight involves Heads
The mechanical energy equation for a pump or a fan (1) can also be written in terms of energy
per unit weight by dividing with gravity - g:

$$p_{in}/\gamma + v_{in}^2/2 g + h_{in} + h_{shaft} = p_{out}/\gamma + v_{out}^2/2 g + h_{out} + h_{loss}$$
 (6)  
where  $\gamma = \rho g = \text{specific weight}$   $h_{shaft} = w_{shaft}/g = \text{net shaft energy head inn per unit mass for a pump, fan or similar}$   $h_{loss} = w_{loss}/g = \text{loss head due to friction}$ 

The dimensions of equation (6) are

energy per unit weight (ft.lb/lb = ft or N.m/N = m)

Head is the energy per unit weight.

$$h_{shaft}$$
 can also be expressed as:  
 $h_{shaft} = w_{shaft} / g = W_{shaft} / m g = W_{shaft} / \gamma Q$  (7)  
where  
 $W_{shaft} = shaft$  power  
 $m = mass$  flow rate  
 $Q = volume$  flow rate

#### **Example - Pumping Water**

Water is pumped from an open tank at level zero to an open tank at level 10 ft. The pump adds four horsepowers to the water when pumping 2 ft<sup>3</sup>/s.

Since  $v_{in} = v_{out} = 0$ ,  $p_{in} = p_{out} = 0$  and  $h_{in} = 0$  - equation (6) can be modified to:

$$h_{shaft} = h_{out} + h_{loss}$$
  
or  
 $h_{loss} = h_{shaft} - h_{out}$  (8)

Equation (7) gives:

$$h_{shaft} = W_{shaft} / \gamma Q = (4 hp)(550 \text{ ft.lb/s/hp}) / (62.4 \text{ lb/ft}^3)(2 \text{ ft}^3/\text{s}) = 17.6 \text{ ft}$$

- specific weight of water 62.4 lb/ft<sup>3</sup>
- 1 hp (English horse power) = 550 ft. lb/s

Combined with (8):

$$h_{loss} = (17.6 \text{ ft}) - (10 \text{ ft}) = 7.6 \text{ ft}$$

The pump efficiency can be calculated from (3) modified for head:

$$\eta = ((17.6 \text{ ft}) - (7.6 \text{ ft})) / (17.6 \text{ ft}) = 0.58$$

**Equations in Fluid Mechanics:** Common fluid mechanics equations - Bernoulli, conservation of energy, conservation of mass, pressure, Navier-Stokes, ideal gas law, Euler equations, Laplace equations, Darcy-Weisbach Equation and the following:

#### The Bernoulli Equation

• The Bernoulli Equation - A statement of the conservation of energy in a form useful for solving problems involving fluids. For a non-viscous, incompressible fluid in steady flow, the sum of pressure, potential and kinetic energies per unit volume is constant at any point.

#### **Conservation laws**

- The conservation laws states that particular measurable properties of an isolated physical system does not change as the system evolves.
- Conservation of energy (including mass)
- Fluid Mechanics and Conservation of Mass The law of conservation of mass states that mass can neither be created nor destroyed.
- The Continuity Equation The Continuity Equation is a statement that mass is conserved.

#### **Darcy-Weisbach Equation**

 Pressure Loss and Head Loss due to Friction in Ducts and Tubes - Major loss - head loss or pressure loss - due to friction in pipes and ducts.

#### **Euler Equations**

In fluid dynamics, the Euler equations govern the motion of a compressible, inviscid fluid.
They correspond to the Navier-Stokes equations with zero viscosity, although they are
usually written in the form shown here because this emphasizes the fact that they directly
represent conservation of mass, momentum, and energy.

#### Laplace's Equation

• The Laplace Equation describes the behavior of gravitational, electric, and fluid potentials.

#### **Ideal Gas Law**

- The Ideal Gas Law For a perfect or ideal gas, the change in density is directly related to the change in temperature and pressure as expressed in the Ideal Gas Law.
- Properties of Gas Mixtures Special care must be taken for gas mixtures when using the ideal gas law, calculating the mass, the individual gas constant or the density.
- The Individual and Universal Gas Constant The Individual and Universal Gas Constant is common in fluid mechanics and thermodynamics.

#### **Navier-Stokes Equations**

The motion of a non-turbulent, Newtonian fluid is governed by the Navier-Stokes equations.
 The equation can be used to model turbulent flow, where the fluid parameters are interpreted as time-averaged values.

#### **Mechanical Energy Equation**

 The Mechanical Energy Equation - The mechanical energy equation in Terms of Energy per Unit Mass, in Terms of Energy per Unit Volume and in Terms of Energy per Unit Weight involves Heads.

#### **Pressure**

• Static Pressure and Pressure Head in a Fluid - Pressure and pressure head in a static fluid.

**Euler Equations:** In fluid dynamics, the Euler equations govern the motion of a compressible, inviscid fluid. They correspond to the Navier-Stokes equations with zero viscosity, although they are usually written in the form shown here because this emphasizes the fact that they directly represent conservation of mass, momentum, and energy.

**Euler Number:** The Euler numbers, also called the secant numbers or zig numbers, are defined for  $|x| < \pi/2$  by

$$\operatorname{sech} x - 1 = -\frac{E_1^* x^2}{2!} + \frac{E_2^* x^4}{4!} - \frac{E_3^* x^6}{6!} + \dots$$

$$\operatorname{sec} x - 1 = \frac{E_1^* x^2}{2!} + \frac{E_2^* x^4}{4!} + \frac{E_3^* x^6}{6!} + \dots$$

where  $\operatorname{sech}(z)$  the hyperbolic secant and sec is the secant. Euler numbers give the number of odd alternating permutations and are related to Genocchi numbers. The base e of the natural logarithm is sometimes known as Euler's number. A different sort of Euler number, the Euler number of a finite complex K, is defined by

$$\chi\left(K\right)=\sum\left(-1\right)^{p}\,\mathrm{rank}\left(C_{p}\left(K\right)\right).$$

This Euler number is a topological invariant. To confuse matters further, the Euler characteristic is sometimes also called the "Euler number," and numbers produced by the prime-generating polynomial  $n^2 - n + 41$  are sometimes called "Euler numbers" (Flannery and Flannery 2000, p. 47).

#### F

**Fecal Coliform:** A group of bacteria that may indicate the presence of human or animal fecal matter in water.

**Filtration:** A series of processes that physically remove particles from water.

**Flood Rim:** The point of an object where the water would run over the edge of something and begin to cause a flood. See Air Break.

**Fluids:** A fluid is defined as a substance that continually deforms (flows) under an applied shear stress regardless of the magnitude of the applied stress. It is a subset of the phases of matter and includes liquids, gases, plasmas and, to some extent, plastic solids. Fluids are also divided into liquids and gases. Liquids form a free surface (that is, a surface not created by their container) while gases do not.

The distinction between solids and fluids is not so obvious. The distinction is made by evaluating the viscosity of the matter: for example silly putty can be considered either a solid or a fluid, depending on the time period over which it is observed. Fluids share the properties of not resisting deformation and the ability to flow (also described as their ability to take on the shape of their containers).

These properties are typically a function of their inability to support a shear stress in static equilibrium. While in a solid, stress is a function of strain, in a fluid, stress is a function of rate of strain. A consequence of this behavior is Pascal's law which entails the important role of pressure in characterizing a fluid's state. Based on how the stress depends on the rate of strain and its derivatives, fluids can be characterized as: Newtonian fluids: where stress is directly proportional to rate of strain, and Non-Newtonian fluids: where stress is proportional to rate of strain, its higher powers and derivatives (basically everything other than Newtonian fluid).

The behavior of fluids can be described by a set of partial differential equations, which are based on the conservation of mass, linear and angular momentum (Navier-Stokes equations) and energy. The study of fluids is fluid mechanics, which is subdivided into fluid dynamics and fluid statics depending on whether the fluid is in motion or not. Fluid **Related Information**: The Bernoulli Equation - A statement of the conservation of energy in a form useful for solving problems involving fluids. For a non-viscous, incompressible fluid in steady flow, the sum of pressure, potential and kinetic energies per unit volume is constant at any point. Equations in Fluid Mechanics - Continuity, Euler, Bernoulli, Dynamic and Total Pressure. Laminar, Transitional or Turbulent Flow? - It is important to know if the fluid flow is laminar, transitional or turbulent when calculating heat transfer or pressure and head loss.

**Friction Head:** The head required to overcome the friction at the interior surface of a conductor and between fluid particles in motion. It varies with flow, size, type and conditions of conductors and fittings, and the fluid characteristics.

#### G

Gas: A gas is one of the four major phases of matter (after solid and liquid, and followed by plasma) that subsequently appear as solid material when they are subjected to increasingly higher temperatures. Thus, as energy in the form of heat is added, a solid (e.g., ice) will first melt to become a liquid (e.g., water), which will then boil or evaporate to become a gas (e.g., water vapor). In some circumstances, a solid (e.g., "dry ice") can directly turn into a gas: this is called sublimation. If the gas is further heated, its atoms or molecules can become (wholly or partially) ionized, turning the gas into a plasma. Relater Gas Information: The Ideal Gas Law - For a perfect or ideal gas the change in density is directly related to the change in temperature and pressure as expressed in the Ideal Gas Law. Properties of Gas Mixtures - Special care must be taken for gas mixtures when using the ideal gas law, calculating the mass, the individual gas constant or the density. The Individual and Universal Gas Constant - The Individual and Universal Gas Constant is common in fluid mechanics and thermodynamics.

Gauge Pressure: Pressure differential above or below ambient atmospheric pressure.

#### Н

**Hazardous Atmosphere:** An atmosphere which by reason of being explosive, flammable, poisonous, corrosive, oxidizing, irritating, oxygen deficient, toxic, or otherwise harmful, may cause death, illness, or injury.

**Hazen-Williams Factor:** Hazen-Williams factor for some common piping materials. Hazen-Williams coefficients are used in the Hazen-Williams equation for friction loss calculation in ducts and pipes.

#### Hazen-Williams Equation - Calculating Friction Head Loss in Water Pipes

Friction head loss (ft H2O per 100 ft pipe) in water pipes can be obtained by using the empirical Hazen-Williams equation. The Darcy-Weisbach equation with the Moody diagram are considered to be the most accurate model for estimating frictional head loss in steady pipe flow. Since the approach requires a not so efficient trial and error solution, an alternative empirical head loss calculation that does not require the trial and error solutions, as the Hazen-Williams equation, may be preferred:

```
f = 0.2083 (100/c)^{1.852} q^{1.852} / d_h^{4.8655} (1)

where
f = friction \ head \ loss \ in \ feet \ of \ water \ per \ 100 \ feet \ of \ pipe \ (ft_{h20}/100 \ ft \ pipe)
c = Hazen-Williams \ roughness \ constant
q = volume \ flow \ (gal/min)
d_h = inside \ hydraulic \ diameter \ (inches)
```

Note that the Hazen-Williams formula is empirical and lacks physical basis. Be aware that the roughness constants are based on "normal" condition with approximately 1 m/s (3 ft/sec).

The Hazen-Williams formula is not the only empirical formula available. Manning's formula is common for gravity driven flows in open channels.

The flow velocity may be calculated as:

```
v = 0.4087 \ q / d_h^2
where
v = flow \ velocity \ (ft/s)
```

The Hazen-Williams formula can be assumed to be relatively accurate for piping systems where the Reynolds Number is above 10<sup>5</sup> (turbulent flow).

- 1 ft (foot) = 0.3048 m
- 1 in (inch) = 25.4 mm
- 1 gal (US)/min = $6.30888 \times 10^{-5}$  m³/s = 0.0227 m³/h = 0.0631 dm³(liter)/s =  $2.228 \times 10^{-3}$  ft³/s = 0.1337 ft³/min = 0.8327 Imperial gal (UK)/min

**Note!** The Hazen-Williams formula gives accurate head loss due to friction for fluids with kinematic viscosity of approximately 1.1 cSt. More about fluids and kinematic viscosity.

The results for the formula are acceptable for cold water at 60° F (15.6° C) with kinematic viscosity 1.13 cSt. For hot water with a lower kinematic viscosity (0.55 cSt at 130° F (54.4° C)) the error will be significant. Since the Hazen Williams method is only valid for water flowing at ordinary temperatures between 40 to 75° F, the Darcy Weisbach method should be used for other liquids or gases.

**Head:** The height of a column or body of fluid above a given point expressed in linear units. Head if often used to indicate gauge pressure. Pressure is equal to the height times the density of the liquid. The measure of the pressure of water expressed in feet of height of water. 1 psi = 2.31 feet of water. There are various types of heads of water depending upon what is being measured. Static (water at rest) and Residual (water at flow conditions).

**Hydraulics**: Hydraulics is a branch of science and engineering concerned with the use of liquids to perform mechanical tasks.

**Hydrodynamics:** Hydrodynamics is the fluid dynamics applied to liquids, such as water, alcohol, and oil.

I

**Ideal Gas:** The Ideal Gas Law - For a perfect or ideal gas the change in density is directly related to the change in temperature and pressure as expressed in the Ideal Gas Law. Properties of Gas Mixtures - Special care must be taken for gas mixtures when using the ideal gas law, calculating the mass, the individual gas constant or the density. The Individual and Universal Gas Constant - The Individual and Universal Gas Constant is common in fluid mechanics and thermodynamics.

**Isentropic Compression/Expansion Process:** If the compression or expansion takes place under constant volume conditions - the process is called **isentropic.** The isentropic process on the basis of the Ideal Gas Law can be expressed as:

```
p / \rho^k = constant (2)

where k = c_p / c_v - the ratio of specific heats - the ratio of specific heat at constant pressure - c_p -
```

 $k = c_p / c_v$  - the ratio of specific heats - the ratio of specific heat at constant pressure -  $c_p$  - to the specific heat at constant volume -  $c_v$ 

**Irrigation:** Water that is especially furnished to help provide and sustain the life of growing plants. It comes from ditches. It is sometimes treated with herbicides and pesticides to prevent the growth of weeds and the development of bugs in a lawn and a garden.

#### K

**Kinematic Viscosity:** The ratio of absolute or dynamic viscosity to density - a quantity in which no force is involved. Kinematic viscosity can be obtained by dividing the absolute viscosity of a fluid with its mass density as

```
v = \mu / \rho (2)

where

v = kinematic \ viscosity

\mu = absolute \ or \ dynamic \ viscosity

\rho = density
```

In the SI-system the theoretical unit is  $m^2/s$  or commonly used **Stoke (St)** where •  $1 St = 10^{-4} m^2/s$  Since the Stoke is an unpractical large unit, it is usual divided by 100 to give the unit called **Centistokes (cSt)** where

1 St = 100 cSt 1 cSt =  $10^{-6}$  m<sup>2</sup>/s

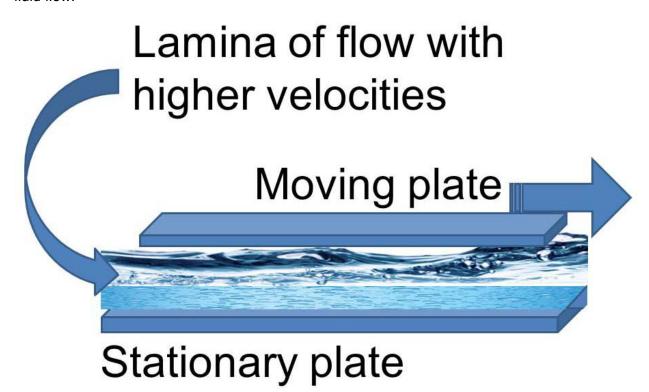
Since the specific gravity of water at 68.4°F (20.2°C) is almost one - 1, the kinematic viscosity of water at 68.4°F is for all practical purposes 1.0 cSt.

**Kinetic Energy:** The ability of an object to do work by virtue of its motion. The energy terms that are used to describe the operation of a pump are pressure and head.

Knudsen Number: Used by modelers who wish to express a non-dimensionless speed.

#### L

Laminar Flow: The resistance to flow in a liquid can be characterized in terms of the viscosity of the fluid if the flow is smooth. In the case of a moving plate in a liquid, it is found that there is a layer or lamina which moves with the plate, and a layer which is essentially stationary if it is next to a stationary plate. There is a gradient of velocity as you move from the stationary to the moving plate, and the liquid tends to move in layers with successively higher speed. This is called laminar flow, or sometimes "streamlined" flow. Viscous resistance to flow can be modeled for laminar flow, but if the lamina break up into turbulence, it is very difficult to characterize the fluid flow.



The common application of laminar flow would be in the smooth flow of a viscous liquid through a tube or pipe. In that case, the velocity of flow varies from zero at the walls to a maximum along the centerline of the vessel. The flow profile of laminar flow in a tube can be calculated by dividing the flow into thin cylindrical elements and applying the viscous force to them. Laminar, Transitional or Turbulent Flow? - It is important to know if the fluid flow is laminar, transitional or turbulent when calculating heat transfer or pressure and head loss.

**Laplace's Equation:** Describes the behavior of gravitational, electric, and fluid potentials.

The scalar form of Laplace's equation is the partial differential equation

$$\nabla^2 \psi = 0, \tag{1}$$

where  $\nabla^2$  is the Laplacian.

Note that the operator  $\nabla^2$  is commonly written as  $\triangle$  by mathematicians (Krantz 1999, p. 16). Laplace's equation is a special case of the Helmholtz differential equation

$$\nabla^2 \psi + k^2 \psi = 0 \tag{2}$$

with k = 0, or Poisson's equation

$$\nabla^2 \psi = -4 \pi \rho$$
with  $\rho = 0$  (3)

The vector Laplace's equation is given by

$$\nabla^2 \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{4}$$

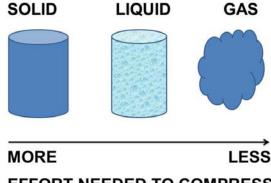
A function \(\psi\) which satisfies Laplace's equation is said to be harmonic. A solution to Laplace's equation has the property that the average value over a spherical surface is equal to the value at the center of the sphere (Gauss's harmonic function theorem). Solutions have no local maxima or minima. Because Laplace's equation is linear, the superposition of any two solutions is also a solution.

Lift (Force): Lift consists of the sum of all the aerodynamic forces normal to the direction of the external airflow.

**Liquids:** An in-between state of matter. They can be found in between the solid and gas states. They don't have to be made up of the same compounds. If you have a variety of materials in a liquid, it is called a solution. One characteristic of a liquid is that it will fill up the shape of a container. If you pour some water in a cup, it will fill up the bottom of the cup first and then fill

the rest. The water will also take the shape of the cup. It fills the bottom first because of gravity. The top part of a liquid will usually have a flat surface. That flat surface is because of gravity too. Putting an ice cube (solid) into a cup will leave you with a cube in the middle of the cup; the shape won't change until the ice becomes a liquid.

Another trait of liquids is that they are difficult to compress.



EFFORT NEEDED TO COMPRESS

154

When you compress something, you take a certain amount and force it into a smaller space. Solids are very difficult to compress and gases are very easy. Liquids are in the middle but tend to be difficult. When you compress something, you force the atoms closer together. When pressure go up, substances are compressed. Liquids already have their atoms close together, so they are hard to compress. Many shock absorbers in cars compress liquids in tubes.

A special force keeps liquids together. Solids are stuck together and you have to force them apart. Gases bounce everywhere and they try to spread themselves out. Liquids actually want to stick together. There will always be the occasional evaporation where extra energy gets a molecule excited and the molecule leaves the system. Overall, liquids have **cohesive** (sticky) forces at work that hold the molecules together. Related Liquid Information: Equations in Fluid Mechanics - Continuity, Euler, Bernoulli, Dynamic and Total Pressure

#### M

**Mach Number:** When an object travels through a medium, then its Mach number is the ratio of the object's speed to the speed of sound in that medium.

**Magnetic Flow Meter:** Inspection of magnetic flow meter instrumentation should include checking for corrosion or insulation deterioration.

Manning Formula for Gravity Flow: Manning's equation can be used to calculate crosssectional average velocity flow in open channels

```
v = k_n/n R^{2/3} S^{1/2} (1)

where

v = cross-sectional average velocity (ft/s, m/s)

k_n = 1.486 for English units and k_n = 1.0 for SI units

A = cross sectional area of flow (ft<sup>2</sup>, m<sup>2</sup>)

n = Manning coefficient of roughness

R = hydraulic radius (ft, m)

S = slope of pipe (ft/ft, m/m)

The volume flow in the channel can be calculated as q = A \ v = A \ k_n/n \ R^{2/3} \ S^{1/2} (2)

where

q = volume flow (ft<sup>3</sup>/s, m<sup>3</sup>/s)

A = cross-sectional area of flow (ft<sup>2</sup>, m<sup>2</sup>)
```

**Maximum Contamination Levels or (MCLs):** The maximum allowable level of a contaminant that federal or state regulations allow in a public water system. If the MCL is exceeded, the water system must treat the water so that it meets the MCL. Or provide adequate backflow protection.

**Mechanical Seal:** A mechanical device used to control leakage from the stuffing box of a pump. Usually made of two flat surfaces, one of which rotates on the shaft. The two flat surfaces are of such tolerances as to prevent the passage of water between them.

Mg/L: milligrams per liter

**Microbe, Microbial:** Any minute, simple, single-celled form of life, especially one that causes disease.

**Microbial Contaminants:** Microscopic organisms present in untreated water that can cause waterborne diseases.

ML: milliliter

#### N

**Navier-Stokes Equations:** The motion of a non-turbulent, Newtonian fluid is governed by the Navier-Stokes equation. The equation can be used to model turbulent flow, where the fluid parameters are interpreted as time-averaged values.

**Newtonian Fluid:** Newtonian fluid (named for Isaac Newton) is a fluid that flows like water—its shear stress is linearly proportional to the velocity gradient in the direction perpendicular to the plane of shear. The constant of proportionality is known as the viscosity. Water is Newtonian, because it continues to exemplify fluid properties no matter how fast it is stirred or mixed.

Contrast this with a non-Newtonian fluid, in which stirring can leave a "hole" behind (that gradually fills up over time - this behavior is seen in materials such as pudding, or to a less rigorous extent, sand), or cause the fluid to become thinner, the drop in viscosity causing it to flow more (this is seen in non-drip paints). For a Newtonian fluid, the viscosity, by definition, depends only on temperature and pressure (and also the chemical composition of the fluid if the fluid is not a pure substance), not on the forces acting upon it. If the fluid is incompressible and viscosity is constant across the fluid, the equation governing the shear stress. Related Newtonian Information: A Fluid is Newtonian if viscosity is constant applied to shear force. Dynamic, Absolute and Kinematic Viscosity - An introduction to dynamic, absolute and kinematic viscosity and how to convert between CentiStokes (cSt), CentiPoises (cP), Saybolt Universal Seconds (SSU) and degree Engler.

**Newton's Third Law:** Newton's third law describes the forces acting on objects interacting with each other. Newton's third law can be expressed as

 "If one object exerts a force F on another object, then the second object exerts an equal but opposite force F on the first object"

Force is a convenient abstraction to represent mentally the pushing and pulling interaction between objects.

It is common to express forces as vectors with magnitude, direction and point of application. The net effect of two or more forces acting on the same point is the vector sum of the forces.

**Non-Newtonian Fluid:** Non-Newtonian fluid viscosity changes with the applied shear force.

#### 0

**Oxidizing:** The process of breaking down organic wastes into simpler elemental forms or by products. Also used to separate combined chlorine and convert it into free chlorine.

#### Ρ

**Pascal's Law:** A pressure applied to a confined fluid at rest is transmitted with equal intensity throughout the fluid.

**Pathogens:** Disease-causing pathogens; waterborne pathogens. A pathogen is a bacterium, virus or parasite that causes or is capable of causing disease. Pathogens may contaminate water and cause waterborne disease.

**pCi/L-** *picocuries per liter:* A curie is the amount of radiation released by a set amount of a certain compound. A picocurie is one quadrillionth of a curie.

**pH:** A measure of the acidity of water. The pH scale runs from 0 to 14 with 7 being the mid-point or neutral. A pH of less than 7 is on the acid side of the scale with 0 as the point of greatest acid activity. A pH of more than 7 is on the basic (alkaline) side of the scale with 14 as the point of greatest basic activity. pH (Power of Hydroxyl Ion Activity).

**Pipeline Appurtenances:** Pressure reducers, bends, valves, regulators (which are a type of valve), etc.

**Peak Demand:** The maximum momentary load placed on a water treatment plant, pumping station or distribution system is the Peak Demand.

**Pipe Velocities:** For calculating fluid pipe velocity.

#### Imperial units

A fluids flow velocity in pipes can be calculated with Imperial or American units as  $v = 0.4085 \, q / d^2 \, (1)$ 

```
where
v = velocity (ft/s)
q = volume flow (US gal. /min)
d = pipe inside diameter (inches)
```

#### SI units

A fluids flow velocity in pipes can be calculated with SI units as

```
where

v = velocity (m/s)

q = volume flow (m^3/s)

d = pipe inside diameter (m)
```

 $v = 1.274 \text{ g}/\text{d}^2(2)$ 

**Pollution:** To make something unclean or impure. Some states will have a definition of pollution that relates to non-health related water problems, like taste and odors. See Contaminated.

**Positive Flow Report-back Signal:** When a pump receives a signal to start, a light will typically be illuminated on the control panel indicating that the pump is running. In order to be sure that the pump is actually pumping water, a Positive flow report-back signal should be installed on the control panel.

**Potable:** Good water which is safe for drinking or cooking purposes. Non-Potable: A liquid or water that is not approved for drinking.

**Potential Energy:** The energy that a body has by virtue of its position or state enabling it to do work.

**PPM:** Abbreviation for parts per million.

**Prandtl Number:** The Prandtl Number is a dimensionless number approximating the ratio of momentum diffusivity and thermal diffusivity and can be expressed as

```
Pr = v / \alpha (1)
where
Pr = Prandtl's number
v = kinematic viscosity (Pa s)
\alpha = thermal diffusivity (W/m K)
```

The Prandtl number can alternatively be expressed as

```
Pr = \mu c_p / k (2)

where

\mu = absolute \ or \ dynamic \ viscosity (kg/m s, cP)

c_p = specific \ heat \ capacity (J/kg K, Btu/(lb °F))

k = thermal \ conductivity (W/m K, Btu/(h ft^2 °F/ft))
```

The Prandtl Number is often used in heat transfer and free and forced convection calculations.

**Pressure:** An introduction to pressure - the definition and presentation of common units as psi and Pa and the relationship between them.

The pressure in a fluid is defined as

"the normal force per unit area exerted on an imaginary or real plane surface in a fluid or a gas"

The equation for pressure can expressed as:

```
p = F/A (1)

where

p = pressure [lb/in^2 (psi) or lb/ft^2 (psf), N/m^2 or kg/ms^2 (Pa)]

F = force [^1], N]

A = area [in^2 or ft^2, m^2]
```

<sup>1)</sup> In the English Engineering System special care must be taken for the force unit. The basic unit for mass is the pound mass (lb<sub>m</sub>) and the unit for the force is the pound (lb) or pound force (lb<sub>f</sub>).

#### **Absolute Pressure**

The **absolute pressure** -  $p_a$  - is measured relative to the *absolute zero pressure* - the pressure that would occur at absolute vacuum.

#### **Gauge Pressure**

A **gauge** is often used to measure the pressure difference between a system and the surrounding atmosphere. This pressure is often called the **gauge pressure** and can be expressed as

```
p_g = p_a - p_o (2)

where

p_g = gauge \ pressure

p_o = atmospheric \ pressure
```

#### **Atmospheric Pressure**

The atmospheric pressure is the pressure in the surrounding air. It varies with temperature and altitude above sea level.

#### Standard Atmospheric Pressure

The **Standard Atmospheric Pressure** (atm) is used as a reference for gas densities and volumes. The Standard Atmospheric Pressure is defined at sea-level at 273°K (0°C) and is **1.01325 bar** or 101325 Pa (absolute). The temperature of 293°K (20°C) is also used.

In imperial units the Standard Atmospheric Pressure is 14.696 psi.

• 1 atm = 1.01325 bar = 101.3 kPa = 14.696 psi ( $lb_{\ell}/in^2$ ) = 760 mmHg =10.33 mH<sub>2</sub>O = 760 torr = 29.92 in Hg = 1013 mbar = 1.0332 kg $_{\ell}/cm^2$  = 33.90 ftH<sub>2</sub>O

**Pressure Head:** The height to which liquid can be raised by a given pressure.

**Pressure Regulation Valves:** Control water pressure and operate by restricting flows. They are used to deliver water from a high pressure to a low-pressure system. The pressure downstream from the valve regulates the amount of flow. Usually, these valves are of the globe design and have a spring-loaded diaphragm that sets the size of the opening.

**Pressure Units:** Since 1 Pa is a small pressure unit, the unit hectopascal (hPa) is widely used, especially in meteorology. The unit kilopascal (kPa) is commonly used designing technical applications like HVAC systems, piping systems and similar.

- 1 hectopascal = 100 pascal = 1 millibar
- 1 kilopascal = 1000 pascal

#### Some Pressure Levels

- 10 Pa The pressure at a depth of 1 mm of water
- 1 kPa Approximately the pressure exerted by a 10 g mass on a 1 cm<sup>2</sup> area
- 10 kPa The pressure at a depth of 1 m of water, or the drop in air pressure when going from sea level to 1000 m elevation
- 10 MPa A "high pressure" washer forces the water out of the nozzles at this pressure
- 10 GPa This pressure forms diamonds

#### Some Alternative Units of Pressure

- 1 bar 100,000 Pa
- 1 millibar 100 Pa

- 1 atmosphere 101,325 Pa
- 1 mm Hg 133 Pa
- 1 inch Hg 3,386 Pa

A **torr** (torr) is named after Torricelli and is the pressure produced by a column of mercury 1 mm high equals to 1/760th of an atmosphere. 1 atm = 760 torr = 14.696 psi

**Pounds per square inch** (psi) was common in U.K. but has now been replaced in almost every country except in the U.S. by the SI units. The Normal atmospheric pressure is 14.696 psi, meaning that a column of air on one square inch in area rising from the Earth's atmosphere to space weighs 14.696 pounds.

The **bar** (bar) is common in the industry. One bar is 100,000 Pa, and for most practical purposes can be approximated to one atmosphere even if

1 Bar = 0.9869 atm

There are 1,000 **millibar** (mbar) in one bar, a unit common in meteorology. 1 millibar = 0.001 bar = 0.750 torr = 100 Pa

#### R

**Residual Disinfection/Protection:** A required level of disinfectant that remains in treated water to ensure disinfection protection and prevent recontamination throughout the distribution system (i.e., pipes).

**Reynolds Number:** The Reynolds number is used to determine whether a flow is laminar or turbulent. The Reynolds Number is a non-dimensional parameter defined by the ratio of dynamic pressure ( $\rho u^2$ ) and shearing stress ( $\mu u/L$ ) - and can be expressed as

```
Re = (\rho u^2) / (\mu u / L)

= \rho u L / \mu

= u L / v (1)

where

Re = Reynolds Number (non-dimensional)

\rho = density (kg/m³, lb<sub>m</sub>/ft³)

u = velocity (m/s, ft/s)

\mu = dynamic viscosity (Ns/m², lb<sub>m</sub>/s ft)

L = characteristic length (m, ft)

v = kinematic viscosity (m²/s, ft²/s)
```

**Richardson Number:** A dimensionless number that expresses the ratio of potential to kinetic energy.

#### S

**Sanitizer:** A chemical which disinfects (kills bacteria), kills algae and oxidizes organic matter.

**Saybolt Universal Seconds (or SUS, SSU):** Saybolt Universal Seconds (or SUS) is used to measure viscosity. The efflux time is Saybolt Universal Seconds (SUS) required for 60 milliliters of a petroleum product to flow through the calibrated orifice of a Saybolt Universal viscometer, under carefully controlled temperature and as prescribed by test method ASTM D 88. This method has largely been replaced by the kinematic viscosity method. Saybolt Universal Seconds is also called the SSU number (Seconds Saybolt Universal) or SSF number (Saybolt Seconds Furol).

Kinematic viscosity versus dynamic or absolute viscosity can be expressed as

```
v = 4.63 \,\mu / \,SG \,(3)

where

v = kinematic \, viscosity \,(SSU)

\mu = dynamic \, or \, absolute \, viscosity \,(cP)
```

**Scale:** Crust of calcium carbonate, the result of unbalanced pool water. Hard insoluble minerals deposited (usually calcium bicarbonate) which forms on pool and spa surfaces and clog filters, heaters and pumps. Scale is caused by high calcium hardness and/or high pH. You will often find major scale deposits inside a backflow prevention assembly.

**Shock:** Also known as superchlorination or break point chlorination. Ridding a pool of organic waste through oxidization by the addition of significant quantities of a halogen.

**Shock Wave:** A shock wave is a strong pressure wave produced by explosions or other phenomena that create violent changes in pressure.

**Solder:** A fusible alloy used to join metallic parts. Solder for potable water pipes shall be lead-free.

**Sound Barrier:** The sound barrier is the apparent physical boundary stopping large objects from becoming supersonic.

**Specific Gravity:** The Specific Gravity - SG - is a dimensionless unit defined as the ratio of density of the material to the density of water at a specified temperature. Specific Gravity can be expressed as

```
SG = \rho / \rho_{H2O} (3)

where

SG = specific gravity

\rho = density of fluid or substance (kg/m³)

\rho_{H2O} = density of water (kg/m³)
```

It is common to use the density of water at  $4^{\circ}$  C ( $39^{\circ}$ F) as a reference - at this point the density of water is at the highest. Since Specific Weight is dimensionless it has the same value in the metric SI system as in the imperial English system (BG). At the reference point the Specific Gravity has same numerically value as density.

#### Example - Specific Gravity

If the density of iron is 7850 kg/m<sup>3</sup>, 7.85 grams per cubic millimeter, 7.85 kilograms per liter, or 7.85 metric tons per cubic meter - the specific gravity of iron is:

$$SG = 7850 \text{ kg/m}^3 / 1000 \text{ kg/m}^3$$
  
=  $7.85$   
(the density of water is 1000 kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

**Specific Weight:** Specific Weight is defined as weight per unit volume. Weight is a **force**.

• Mass and Weight - the difference! - What is weight and what is mass? An explanation of the difference between weight and mass.

Specific Weight can be expressed as

$$\gamma = \rho g (2)$$

where

 $\gamma = \text{specific weight } (kN/m^3)$ 
 $\sigma = \text{specific potential of gravity } (m/s^2)$ 

g = acceleration of gravity  $(m/s^2)$ The SI-units of specific weight are kN/m<sup>3</sup>. The imperial units are lb/ft<sup>3</sup>. The local acceleration g is under normal conditions 9.807 m/s<sup>2</sup> in SI-units and 32.174 ft/s<sup>2</sup> in imperial units.

#### Example - Specific Weight Water

Specific weight for water at 60 °F is 62.4 lb/ft<sup>3</sup> in imperial units and 9.80 kN/m<sup>3</sup> in SI-units.

Example - Specific Weight Some other Materials

_	Specific Weight - γ				
Product	Imperial Units (lb/ft³)	SI Units (kN/m³)			
Ethyl Alcohol	49.3	7.74			
Gasoline	42.5	6.67			
Glycerin	78.6	12.4			
Mercury	847	133			
SAE 20 Oil	57	8.95			
Seawater	64	10.1			
Water	62.4	9.80			

Static Head: The height of a column or body of fluid above a given point

**Static Pressure:** The pressure in a fluid at rest.

**Static Pressure and Pressure Head in Fluids:** The pressure indicates the normal force per unit area at a given point acting on a given plane. Since there is no shearing stresses present in a fluid at rest - the pressure in a fluid is independent of direction.

For fluids - liquids or gases - at rest the pressure gradient in the vertical direction depends only on the specific weight of the fluid.

How pressure changes with elevation can be expressed as

```
dp = - γ dz (1)

where
dp = change in pressure
dz = change in height
γ = specific weight
```

The pressure gradient in vertical direction is negative - the pressure decrease upwards.

**Specific Weight:** Specific Weight can be expressed as:

```
y = \rho g (2)
where
y = specific weight
g = acceleration of gravity
```

In general the specific weight -  $\gamma$  - is constant for fluids. For gases the specific weight -  $\gamma$  - varies with the elevation.

**Static Pressure in a Fluid:** For an incompressible fluid - as a liquid - the pressure difference between two elevations can be expressed as:

```
p_2 - p_1 = -\gamma (z_2 - z_1) (3)
where
p_2 = pressure \ at \ level \ 2
p_1 = pressure \ at \ level \ 1
z_2 = level \ 2
z_1 = level \ 1
(3) can be transformed to:
p_1 - p_2 = \gamma (z_2 - z_1) (4)
or
p_1 - p_2 = \gamma h (5)
where
h = z_2 - z_1 \ difference \ in \ elevation - the \ depth \ down \ from \ location \ z_2.
or
p_1 = \gamma h + p_2 (6)
```

#### Static Pressure and Pressure Head in Fluids Continued:

#### The Pressure Head

(6) can be transformed to:

$$h = (p_2 - p_1) / y$$
 (6)

*h* express **the pressure head** - the height of a column of fluid of specific weight -  $\gamma$  - required to give a pressure difference of  $(p_2 - p_1)$ .

#### Example - Pressure Head

```
A pressure difference of 5 psi (lbf/in²) is equivalent to 5 (lbf/in²) 12 (in/ft) 12 (in/ft) / 62.4 (lb/ft³) = <math>\underline{11.6} ft of water 5 (lbf/in²) 12 (in/ft) 12 (in/ft) / 847 (lb/ft³) = <math>\underline{0.85} ft of mercury when specific weight of water is 62.4 (lb/ft³) and specific weight of mercury is 847 (lb/ft³).
```

**Streamline - Stream Function:** A streamline is the path that an imaginary particle would follow if it was embedded in the flow.

**Strouhal Number:** A quantity describing oscillating flow mechanisms. The Strouhal Number is a dimensionless value useful for analyzing oscillating, unsteady fluid flow dynamics problems.

The Strouhal Number can be expressed as  $St = \omega I / v (1)$ 

where St = Strouhal Number  $\omega = oscillation frequency$  I = characteristic lengthv = flow velocity

The Strouhal Number represents a measure of the ratio of inertial forces due to the unsteadiness of the flow or local acceleration to the inertial forces due to changes in velocity from one point to another in the flow field.

The vortices observed behind a stone in a river, or measured behind the obstruction in a vortex flow meter, illustrate these principles.

**Stuffing Box:** That portion of the pump which houses the packing or mechanical seal.

**Submerged:** To cover with water or liquid substance.

**Supersonic Flow:** Flow with speed above the speed of sound, 1,225 km/h at sea level, is said to be supersonic.

**Surface Tension:** Surface tension is a force within the surface layer of a liquid that causes the layer to behave as an elastic sheet. The cohesive forces between liquid molecules are responsible for the phenomenon known as surface tension. The molecules at the surface do not have other like molecules on all sides of them and consequently they cohere more strongly to those directly associated with them on the surface. This forms a surface "film" which makes it more difficult to move an object through the surface than to move it when it is completely submersed. Surface tension is typically measured in dynes/cm, the force in dynes required to break a film of length 1 cm. Equivalently, it can be stated as surface energy in ergs per square centimeter. Water at 20°C has a surface tension of 72.8 dynes/cm compared to 22.3 for ethyl alcohol and 465 for mercury.

Surface tension is typically measured in dynes/cm or N/m.

Liquid	Surface Tension			
Liquid	N/m	dynes/cm		
Ethyl Alcohol	0.0223	22.3		
Mercury	0.465	465		
Water 20°C	0.0728	72.75		
Water 100°C	0.0599	58.9		

Surface tension is the energy required to stretch a unit change of a surface area. Surface tension will form a drop of liquid to a sphere since the sphere offers the smallest area for a definite volume.

Surface tension can be defined as

$$\sigma = F_s / I$$
 (1)

where

 $\sigma$  = surface tension (N/m)

 $F_s$  = stretching force (N)

I = unit length (m)

#### **Alternative Units**

Alternatively, surface tension is typically measured in dynes/cm, which is

- the force in dynes required to break a film of length 1 cm
- or as surface energy J/m² or alternatively ergs per square centimeter.

   1 dynes/cm = 0.001 N/m = 0.0000685 lb<sub>f</sub>/ft = 0.571 10<sup>-5</sup> lb<sub>f</sub>/in = 0.0022 poundal/ft = 0.00018 poundal/in = 1.0 mN/m = 0.001 J/m² = 1.0 erg/cm² = 0.00010197 kg<sub>f</sub>/m

Common Imperial units used are lb/ft and lb/in.

Water surface tension at different temperatures can be taken from the table below:

Temperature (°C)	Surface Tension - σ - (N/m)
0	0.0757
10	0.0742
20	0.0728
30	0.0712
40	0.0696
50	0.0679
60	0.0662
70	0.0644
80	0.0626
90	0.0608
100	0.0588

#### **Surface Tension of some common Fluids**

benzene : 0.0289 (N/m)diethyl ether : 0.0728 (N/m)

• carbon tetrachloride : 0.027 (N/m)

chloroform : 0.0271 (N/m)ethanol : 0.0221 (N/m)

ethylene glycol : 0.0477 (N/m)

glycerol: 0.064 (N/m)
mercury: 0.425 (N/m)
methanol: 0.0227 (N/m)
propanol: 0.0237 (N/m)
toluene: 0.0284 (N/m)

water at 20°C: 0.0729 (N/m)

**Surge Tanks:** Surge tanks can be used to control Water Hammer. A limitation of hydropneumatic tanks is that they do not provide much storage to meet peak demands during power outages and you have very limited time to do repairs on equipment.

#### Т

**Telemetering Systems:** The following are common pressure sensing devices: Helical Sensor, Bourdon Tube, and Bellows Sensor. The most frequent problem that affects a liquid pressure-sensing device is air accumulation at the sensor. A diaphragm element being used as a level sensor would be used in conjunction with a pressure sensor. Devices must often transmit more than one signal. You can use several types of systems including: Polling, Scanning and Multiplexing. Transmitting equipment requires installation where temperature will not exceed 130 degrees F.

**Thixotropic Fluids: Shear Thinning Fluids** or **Thixotropic Fluids** reduce their viscosity as agitation or pressure is increased at a constant temperature. Ketchup and mayonnaise are examples of thixotropic materials. They appear thick or viscous but are possible to pump quite easily.

**Transonic:** Flow with speed at velocities just below and above the speed of sound is said to be transonic.

**Turbidity:** A measure of the cloudiness of water caused by suspended particles.

#### U

**U-Tube Manometer:** Pressure measuring devices using liquid columns in vertical or inclined tubes are called manometers. One of the most common is the water filled u-tube manometer used to measure pressure difference in pitot or orifices located in the airflow in air handling or ventilation systems.

#### V

**Valve:** A device that opens and closes to regulate the flow of liquids. Faucets, hose bibs, and Ball are examples of valves.

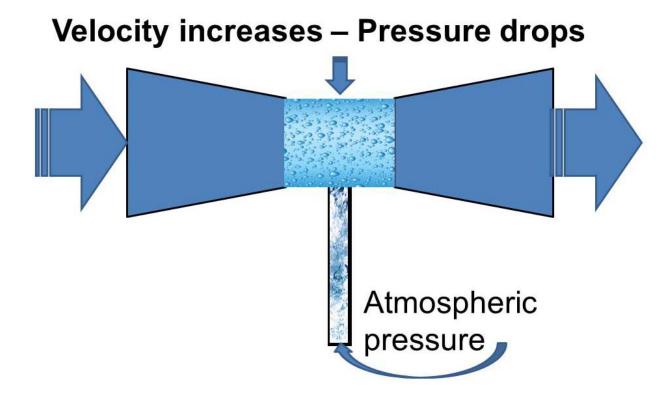
**Vane:** That portion of an impeller which throws the water toward the volute.

**Vapor Pressure:** For a particular substance at any given temperature there is a pressure at which the vapor of that substance is in equilibrium with its liquid or solid forms.

**Velocity Head:** The vertical distance a liquid must fall to acquire the velocity with which it flows through the piping system. For a given quantity of flow, the velocity head will vary indirectly as the pipe diameter varies.

**Venturi:** A system for speeding the flow of the fluid, by constricting it in a coneshaped tube. Venturi are used to measure the speed of a fluid, by measuring the pressure changes from one point to another along the venture. A venturi can also be used to inject a liquid or a gas into another liquid. A pump forces the liquid flow through a tube connected to:

- A venturi to increase the speed of the fluid (restriction of the pipe diameter)
- · A short piece of tube connected to the gas source
- A second venturi that decrease the speed of the fluid (the pipe diameter increase again)
- After the first venturi the pressure in the pipe is lower, so the gas is sucked in the pipe.
   Then the mixture enters the second venturi and slow down. At the end of the system a mixture of gas and liquid appears and the pressure rise again to its normal level in the pipe.
- This technique is used for ozone injection in water.



The newest injector design causes complete mixing of injected materials (air, ozone or chemicals), eliminating the need for other in-line mixers. Venturi injectors have no moving parts and are maintenance free. They operate effectively over a wide range of pressures (from 1 to 250 psi) and require only a minimum pressure difference to initiate the vacuum at the suction part. Venturis are often built in thermoplastics (PVC, PE, PVDF), stainless steel or other metals.

The cavitation effect at the injection chamber provides an instantaneous mixing, creating thousands of very tiny bubbles of gas in the liquid. The small bubbles provide and increased gas exposure to the liquid surface area, increasing the effectiveness of the process (i.e. ozonation).

**Vibration:** A force that is present on construction sites and must be considered. The vibrations caused by backhoes, dump trucks, compactors and traffic on job sites can be substantial.

**Viscosity:** Informally, viscosity is the quantity that describes a fluid's resistance to flow. Fluids resist the relative motion of immersed objects through them as well as to the motion of layers with differing velocities within them. Formally, viscosity (represented by the symbol  $\eta$  "eta") is the ratio of the shearing stress (F/A) to the velocity gradient ( $\Delta v_x/\Delta z$  or  $dv_x/dz$ ) in a fluid.

$$\eta = (\frac{F}{A}) \div (\frac{\Delta v_x}{\Delta z})$$
 or  $\eta = (\frac{F}{A}) \div (\frac{dv_x}{dz})$ 

The more usual form of this relationship, called Newton's equation, states that the resulting shear of a fluid is directly proportional to the force applied and inversely proportional to its viscosity. The similarity to Newton's second law of motion (F = ma) should be apparent.

$$\frac{F}{A} = \eta \frac{\Delta v_x}{\Delta z}$$
 or  $\frac{F}{A} = \eta \frac{dv_x}{dz}$ 

$$F = m \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$$
 or  $F = m \frac{dv}{dt}$ 

The SI unit of viscosity is the pascal second [Pa·s], which has no special name. Despite its self-proclaimed title as an international system, the International System of Units has had very little international impact on viscosity. The pascal second is rarely used in scientific and technical publications today. The most common unit of viscosity is the dyne second per square centimeter [dyne·s/cm²], which is given the name poise [P] after the French physiologist Jean Louis Poiseuille (1799-1869). Ten poise equal one pascal second [Pa·s] making the centipoise [cP] and millipascal second [mPa·s] identical.

There are actually two quantities that are called viscosity. The quantity defined above is sometimes called dynamic viscosity, absolute viscosity, or simple viscosity to distinguish it from the other quantity, but is usually just called viscosity. The other quantity called kinematic viscosity (represented by the symbol v "nu") is the ratio of the viscosity of a fluid to its density.

$$v = \frac{\eta}{\rho}$$

Kinematic viscosity is a measure of the resistive flow of a fluid under the influence of gravity. It is

frequently measured using a device called a capillary viscometer -- basically a graduated can with a narrow tube at the bottom. When two fluids of equal volume are placed in identical capillary viscometers and allowed to flow under the influence of gravity, a viscous fluid takes longer than a less viscous fluid to flow through the tube. Capillary viscometers are discussed in more detail later in this section. The SI unit of kinematic viscosity is the square meter per second [m²/s], which has no special name. This unit is so large that it is rarely used. A more common unit of kinematic viscosity is the square centimeter per second [cm²/s], which is given the name stoke [St] after the English scientist George Stoke. This unit is also a bit too large and so the most common unit is probably the square millimeter per second [mm²/s] or centistoke [cSt].

**Viscosity and Reference Temperatures:** The viscosity of a fluid is highly temperature dependent and for either dynamic or kinematic viscosity to be meaningful, the **reference temperature** must be quoted. In ISO 8217 the reference temperature for a residual fluid is 100°C. For a distillate fluid the reference temperature is 40°C.

- For a liquid the kinematic viscosity will **decrease** with higher temperature.
- For a gas the kinematic viscosity will increase with higher temperature.

**Volute:** The spiral-shaped casing surrounding a pump impeller that collects the liquid discharged by the impeller.

**Vorticity:** Vorticity is defined as the circulation per unit area at a point in the flow field.

**Vortex:** A vortex is a whirlpool in the water.

#### W

**Water Freezing:** The effects of water freezing in storage tanks can be minimized by alternating water levels in the tank.

Water Storage Facility Inspection: During an inspection of your water storage facility, you should inspect the Cathodic protection system including checking the anode's condition and the connections. The concentration of polyphosphates that is used for corrosion control in storage tanks is typically 5 mg/L or less. External corrosion of steel water storage facilities can be reduced with Zinc or aluminum coatings. All storage facilities should be regularly sampled to determine the quality of water that enters and leaves the facility. One tool or piece of measuring equipment is the Jackson turbidimeter, which is a method to measure cloudiness in water.

**Wave Drag:** Wave drag refers to a sudden and very powerful drag that appears on aircrafts flying at high-subsonic speeds.

**Water Purveyor:** The individuals or organization responsible to help provide, supply, and furnish quality water to a community.

**Water Works:** All of the pipes, pumps, reservoirs, dams and buildings that make up a water system.

**Waterborne Diseases:** A disease, caused by a virus, bacterium, protozoan, or other microorganism, capable of being transmitted by water (e.g., typhoid fever, cholera, amoebic dysentery, gastroenteritis).

**Weber Number:** A dimensionless value useful for analyzing fluid flows where there is an interface between two different fluids. Since the Weber Number represents an index of the inertial force to the surface tension force acting on a fluid element, it can be useful analyzing thin films flows and the formation of droplets and bubbles.

## **Appendixes and Charts**

**Density of Common Liquids**The density of some common liquids can be found in the table below:

offilition liquids can be found in th	Temperature	Density
Liquid	- <i>t</i> - (°C)	- <i>ρ</i> - (kg/m³)
Acetic Acid	25	1049
Acetone	25	785
Acetonitrile	20	782
Alcohol, ethyl	25	785
Alcohol, methyl	25	787
Alcohol, propyl	25	780
Ammonia (aqua)	25	823
Aniline	25	1019
Automobile oils	15	880 - 940
Beer (varies)	10	1010
Benzene	25	874
Benzyl	15	1230
Brine	15	1230
Bromine	25	3120
Butyric Acid	20	959
Butane	25	599
n-Butyl Acetate	20	880
n-Butyl Alcohol	20	810
n-Butylhloride	20	886
Caproic acid	25	921
Carbolic acid	15	956
Carbon disulfide	25	1261
Carbon tetrachloride	25	1584
Carene	25	857
Castor oil	25	956
Chloride	25	1560
Chlorobenzene	20	1106
Chloroform	20	1489
Chloroform	25	1465
Citric acid	25	1660
Coconut oil	15	924
Cotton seed oil	15	926
Cresol	25	1024
Creosote	15	1067
Crude oil, 48° API	60°F	790

0 1 11 100 101	000=	205
Crude oil, 40° API	60°F	825
Crude oil, 35.6° API	60°F	847
Crude oil, 32.6° API	60°F	862
Crude oil, California	60°F	915
Crude oil, Mexican	60°F	973
Crude oil, Texas	60°F	873
Cumene	25	860
Cyclohexane	20	779
Cyclopentane	20	745
Decane	25	726
Diesel fuel oil 20 to 60	15	820 - 950
Diethyl ether	20	714
o-Dichlorobenzene	20	1306
Dichloromethane	20	1326
Diethylene glycol	15	1120
Dichloromethane	20	1326
Dimethyl Acetamide	20	942
N,N-Dimethylformamide	20	949
Dimethyl Sulfoxide	20	1100
Dodecane	25	755
Ethane	-89	570
Ether	25	73
Ethylamine	16	681
Ethyl Acetate	20	901
Ethyl Alcohol	20	789
Ethyl Ether	20	713
Ethylene Dichloride	20	1253
Ethylene glycol	25	1097
Fluorine refrigerant R-12	25	1311
Formaldehyde	45	812
Formic acid 10%oncentration	20	1025
Formic acid 80%oncentration	20	1221
Freon - 11	21	1490
Freon - 21	21	1370
Fuel oil	60°F	890
Furan	25	1416
Furforol	25	1155
Gasoline, natural	60°F	711
Gasoline, Vehicle	60°F	737
Gas oils	60°F	890
Glucose	60°F	1350 - 1440
Glycerin	25	1259
2., 30		

Glycerol	25	1126
Heptane	25	676
Hexane	25	655
Hexanol	25	811
Hexene	25	671
Hydrazine	25	795
lodine	25	4927
lonene	25	932
Isobutyl Alcohol	20	802
Iso-Octane	20	692
Isopropyl Alcohol	20	785
	20	853
Isopropyl Myristate  Kerosene	60°F	
Linolenic Acid		817
	25	897
Linseed oil	25	929
Methane	-164	465
Methanol	20	791
Methyl Isoamyl Ketone	20	888
Methyl Isobutyl Ketone	20	801
Methyl n-Propyl Ketone	20	808
Methyl t-Butyl Ether	20	741
N-Methylpyrrolidone	20	1030
Methyl Ethyl Ketone	20	805
Milk	15	1020 - 1050
Naphtha	15	665
Naphtha, wood	25	960
Napthalene	25	820
Ocimene	25	798
Octane	15	918
Olive oil	20	800 - 920
Oxygen (liquid)	-183	1140
Palmitic Acid	25	851
Pentane	20	626
Pentane	25	625
Petroleum Ether	20	640
Petrol, natural	60°F	711
Petrol, Vehicle	60°F	737
Phenol	25	1072
Phosgene	0	1378
Phytadiene	25	823
Pinene	25	857
Propane	-40	583

Propane, R-290	25	494
Propanol	25	804
Propylenearbonate	20	1201
Propylene	25	514
Propylene glycol	25	965
Pyridine	25	979
Pyrrole	25	966
Rape seed oil	20	920
Resorcinol	25	1269
Rosin oil	15	980
Sea water	25	1025
Silane	25	718
Silicone oil		760
Sodium Hydroxide (caustic soda)	15	1250
Sorbaldehyde	25	895
Soya bean oil	15	924 - 928
Stearic Acid	25	891
Sulfuric Acid 95%onc.	20	1839
Sugar solution 68 brix	15	1338
Sunflower oil	20	920
Styrene	25	903
Terpinene	25	847
Tetrahydrofuran	20	888
Toluene	20	867
Toluene	25	862
Triethylamine	20	728
Trifluoroacetic Acid	20	1489
Turpentine	25	868
Water - pure	4	1000
Water - sea	77°F	1022
Whale oil	15	925
o-Xylene	20	880
$\frac{3}{2} = 0.0000700 = -0.03 = 0.40000 = -0.000000000000000000000000000000$	/a.a.l /l.a.a.a.a.i.a.l\ = /	3 400F/ L/LL

 $1 \text{ kg/m}^3 = 0.001 \text{ g/cm}^{\frac{3}{3}} = 0.0005780 \text{ oz/in}^3 = 0.16036 \text{ oz/gal (Imperial)} = 0.1335 \text{ oz/gal (U.S.)} = 0.0624 \text{ lb/ft}^3 = 0.000036127 \text{ lb/in}^3 = 1.6856 \text{ lb/yd}^3 = 0.010022 \text{ lb/gal (Imperial)} = 0.008345 \text{ lb/gal (U.S)} = 0.0007525 \text{ ton/yd}^3 = 0.0007525 \text{ to$ 

# **Dynamic or Absolute Viscosity Units Converting Table**The table below can be used to convert between common dynamic or absolute viscosity units.

Multiply by		between commi	Convert to		,		
Convert from	Poiseuille (Pa s)	Poise (dyne s/ cm² = g / cm s)	centiPoise	kg / m h	kg <sub>f</sub> s / m <sup>2</sup>		
Poiseuille (Pa s)	1	10	10 <sup>3</sup>	3.63 10 <sup>3</sup>	0.102		
Poise (dyne s / cm <sup>2</sup> = g / cm s)	0.1	1	100	360	0.0102		
centiPoise	0.001	0.01	1	3.6	0.00012		
kg / m h	2.78 10 <sup>-4</sup>	0.00278	0.0278	1	2.83 10 <sup>-5</sup>		
kg <sub>f</sub> s / m <sup>2</sup>	9.81	98.1	9.81 10 <sup>3</sup>	3.53 10 <sup>4</sup>	1		
lb <sub>f</sub> s / inch <sup>2</sup>	6.89 10 <sup>3</sup>	6.89 10 <sup>4</sup>	6.89 10 <sup>6</sup>	2.48 10 <sup>7</sup>	703		
lb <sub>f</sub> s / ft <sup>2</sup>	47.9	479	4.79 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.72 10 <sup>5</sup>	0.0488		
lb <sub>f</sub> h / ft <sup>2</sup>	1.72 10 <sup>5</sup>	1.72 10 <sup>6</sup>	1.72 10 <sup>8</sup>	6.21 10 <sup>8</sup>	1.76 10 <sup>4</sup>		
lb / ft s	1.49	14.9	1.49 10 <sup>3</sup>	5.36 10 <sup>3</sup>	0.152		
lb / ft h	4.13 10 <sup>-4</sup>	0.00413	0.413	1.49	4.22 10 <sup>-5</sup>		
Multiply by		Convert to					
Convert from	lb <sub>f</sub> s / inch <sup>2</sup>	lb <sub>f</sub> s / ft <sup>2</sup>	lb <sub>f</sub> h / ft <sup>2</sup>	lb / ft s	lb / ft h		
Poiseuille (Pa s)	1.45 10 <sup>-4</sup>	0.0209	5.8 10 <sup>-6</sup>	0.672	2.42 10 <sup>3</sup>		
Poise (dyne s / cm <sup>2</sup> = g / cm s)	1.45 10 <sup>-5</sup>	0.00209	5.8 10 <sup>-7</sup>	0.0672	242		
centiPoise	1.45 10 <sup>-7</sup>	2.9 10 <sup>-5</sup>	5.8 10 <sup>-9</sup>	0.000672	2.42		
kg/mh	4.03 10 <sup>-8</sup>	5.8 10 <sup>-6</sup>	1.61 10 <sup>-9</sup>	0.000187	0.672		
kg <sub>f</sub> s / m <sup>2</sup>	0.00142	20.5	5.69 10 <sup>-5</sup>	6.59	2.37 10 <sup>4</sup>		
lb <sub>f</sub> s / inch <sup>2</sup>	1	144	0.04	4.63 10 <sup>3</sup>	1.67 10 <sup>7</sup>		
lb <sub>f</sub> s / ft <sup>2</sup>	0.00694	1	0.000278	32.2	1.16 10 <sup>5</sup>		
lb <sub>f</sub> h / ft <sup>2</sup>	25	3.6 10 <sup>3</sup>	1	1.16 10 <sup>5</sup>	4.17 10 <sup>8</sup>		
lb / ft s	0.000216	0.0311	8.63 10 <sup>-6</sup>	1	3.6 10 <sup>3</sup>		
lb / ft h	6 10- <sup>8</sup>	1.16 10 <sup>5</sup>	2.4 10 <sup>-9</sup>	0.000278	1		

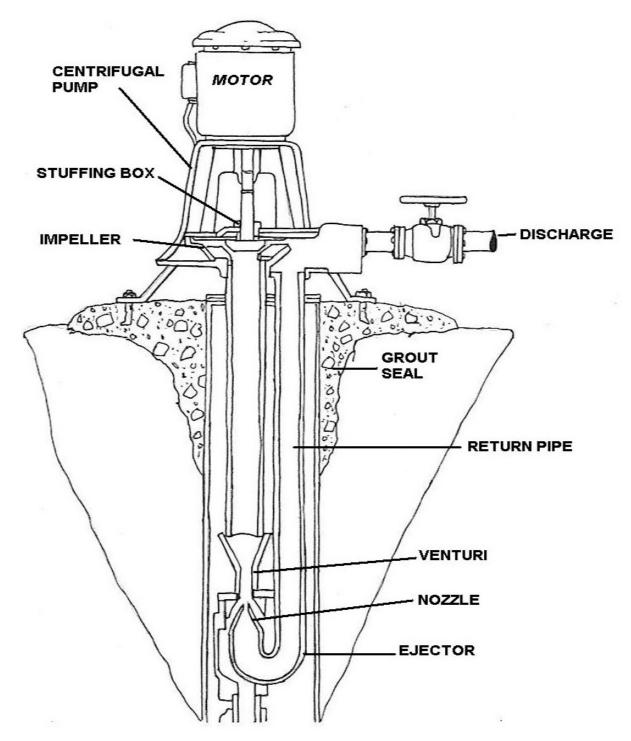
#### **Friction Loss Chart**

The table below can be used to indicate the friction loss - feet of liquid per 100 feet of pipe - in

standard schedule 40 steel pipes.

Scriedul	Flow Rate Kinematic Viscosity - SSU							
Pipe	FIOW	Rate						1500
Size (inches)	(gpm)	(l/s)	31 (Water)	100 (~Cream)	(~Vegetable oil)	(~SAE 10 oil)	800 (~Tomato juice)	1500 (~SAE 30 oil)
1/2	3	0.19	10.0	25.7	54.4	108.0	218.0	411.0
3/4	3	0.19	2.5	8.5	17.5	35.5	71.0	131.0
3/4	5	0.32	6.3	14.1	29.3	59.0	117.0	219.0
	3	0.19	0.8	3.2	6.6	13.4	26.6	50.0
	5	0.32	1.9	5.3	11.0	22.4	44.0	83.0
1	10	0.63	6.9	11.2	22.4	45.0	89.0	165.0
	15	0.95	14.6	26.0	34.0	67.0	137.0	
	20	1.26	25.1	46	46.0	90.0	180.0	
	5	0.32	0.5	1.8	3.7	7.6	14.8	26.0
1 1/4	10	0.63	1.8	3.6	7.5	14.9	30.0	55.0
	15	0.95	3.7	6.4	11.3	22.4	45.0	84.0
	10	0.63	0.8	1.9	4.2	8.1	16.5	31.0
	15	0.95	1.7	2.8	6.2	12.4	25.0	46.0
1 1/2	20	1.26	2.9	5.3	8.1	16.2	33.0	61.0
	30	1.9	6.3	11.6	12.2	24.3	50.0	91.0
	40	2.5	10.8	19.6	20.8	32.0	65.0	121.0
	20	1.26	0.9	1.5	3.0	6.0	11.9	22.4
	30	1.9	1.8	3.2	4.4	9.0	17.8	33.0
2	40	2.5	3.1	5.8	5.8	11.8	24.0	44.0
	60	3.8	6.6	11.6	13.4	17.8	36.0	67.0
	80	5.0	1.6	3.0	3.2	4.8	9.7	18.3
	30	1.9	0.8	1.4	2.2	4.4	8.8	16.6
	40	2.5	1.3	2.5	3.0	5.8	11.8	22.2
2 1/2	60	3.8	2.7	5.1	5.5	8.8	17.8	34.0
	80	5.0	4.7	8.3	9.7	11.8	24.0	44.0
	100	6.3	7.1	12.2	14.1	14.8	29.0	55.0
	60	3.8	0.9	1.8	1.8	3.7	7.3	13.8
	100	6.3	2.4	4.4	5.1	6.2	12.1	23.0
3	125	7.9	3.6	6.5	7.8	8.1	15.3	29.0
3	150	9.5	5.1	9.2	10.4	11.5	18.4	35.0
	175	11.0	6.9	11.7	13.8	15.8	21.4	40.0
	200	12.6	8.9	15.0	17.8	20.3	25.0	46.0
	80	5.0	0.4	0.8	0.8	1.7	3.3	6.2
4	100	6.3	0.6	1.2	1.3	2.1	4.1	7.8
	125	7.9	0.9	1.8	2.1	2.6	5.2	9.8

	4=0		4.0	- 4		- 1		44 =
	150	9.5	1.3	2.4	2.9	3.1	6.2	11.5
	175	11.0	1.8	3.2	4.0	4.0	7.4	13.7
	200	12.6	2.3	4.2	5.1	5.1	8.3	15.5
	250	15.8	3.5	6.0	7.4	8.0	10.2	19.4
	125	7.9	0.1	0.3	0.3	0.52	1.0	1.9
	150	9.5	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.6	1.2	2.3
	175	11.0	0.2	0.4	0.5	0.7	1.4	2.6
6	200	12.6	0.3	0.6	0.7	8.0	1.6	3.0
	250	15.8	0.5	8.0	1.0	1.0	2.1	3.7
	300	18.9	1.1	8.5	10.0	11.6	12.4	23.0
	400	25.2	1.1	1.9	2.3	2.8	3.2	6.0
	250	15.8	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.7	1.2
8	300	18.9	0.3	1.2	1.4	1.5	2.5	4.6
	400	25.2	0.3	0.5	0.6	0.7	1.1	2.0
10	300	18.9	0.1	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.8	1.5
10	400	25.2	0.1	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.4	0.8



### **Hazen-Williams Coefficients**

Hazen-Williams factor for some common piping materials. Hazen-Williams coefficients are used in the Hazen-Williams equation for friction loss calculation in ducts and pipes. Coefficients for some common materials used in ducts and pipes can be found in the table below:

Material	Hazen-Williams Coefficient - C -
Asbestos Cement	140
Brass	130 - 140
Brick sewer	100
Cast-Iron - new unlined (CIP)	130
Cast-Iron 10 years old	107 - 113
Cast-Iron 20 years old	89 - 100
Cast-Iron 30 years old	75 - 90
Cast-Iron 40 years old	64-83
Cast-Iron, asphalt coated	100
Cast-Iron, cement lined	140
Cast-Iron, bituminous lined	140
Cast-Iron, wrought plain	100
Concrete	100 - 140
Copper or Brass	130 - 140
Ductile Iron Pipe (DIP)	140
Fiber	140
Galvanized iron	120
Glass	130
Lead	130 - 140
Plastic	130 - 150
Polyethylene, PE, PEH	150
PVC, CPVC	150
Smooth Pipes	140
Steel new unlined	140 - 150
Steel	
Steel, welded and seamless	100
Steel, interior riveted, no projecting rivets	100
Steel, projecting girth rivets	100
Steel, vitrified, spiral-riveted	90 - 100
Steel, corrugated	60
Tin	130
Vitrified Clays	110
Wood Stave	110 - 120

#### **Pressure Head**

A pressure difference of 5 psi (lbf/in²) is equivalent to

5 ( $lbf/in^2$ ) 12 (in/ft) 12 (in/ft) / 62.4 ( $lb/ft^3$ ) =  $\underline{11.6}$  ft of water 5 ( $lbf/in^2$ ) 12 (in/ft) 12 (in/ft) / 847 ( $lb/ft^3$ ) =  $\underline{0.85}$  ft of mercury When specific weight of water is 62.4 ( $lb/ft^3$ ) and specific weight of mercury is 847 ( $lb/ft^3$ ).

Heads at different velocities can be taken from the table below:

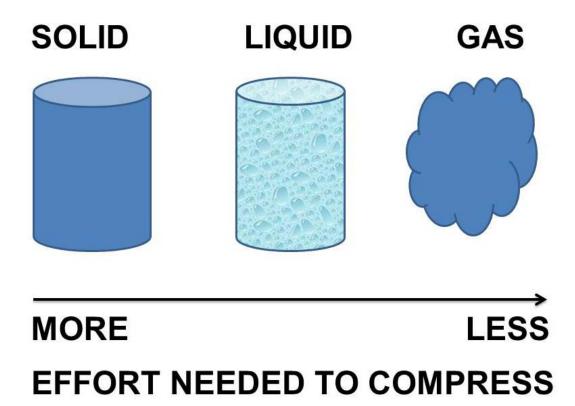
(ft)
0.004
0.016
0035
0.062
0.097
0.140
0.190
0.248
0.314
0.389
0.470
0.560
0.657
0.762
0.875
0.995
1.123
1.259
1.403
1.555
1.881
2.239
2.627
3.047
3.498
3.980
4.493
5.037
5.613
6.219
6.856
7.525 = 12 in = 0.3333 vd

1 ft (foot) = 0.3048 m = 12 in = 0.3333 yd.

## **Thermal Properties of Water**

Temperature	Absolute pressure	Density	Specific volume	Specific Heat	Specific entropy
- <i>t</i> - (°C)	- <i>p</i> - (kN/m <sup>2</sup> )	- <i>ρ -</i> (kg/m³)	- <i>v</i> - (m <sup>3</sup> /kgx10 <sup>-3</sup> )	- c <sub>ρ</sub> - (kJ/kgK)	- e - (kJ/kgK)
0	0.6	1000	100	4.217	0
5	0.9	1000	100	4.204	0.075
10	1.2	1000	100	4.193	0.150
15	1.7	999	100	4.186	0.130
20	2.3	998	100	4.182	0.223
25	3.2	997	100	4.181	0.290
30	4.3	996	100	4.179	0.307
35	5.6	994	100	4.179	0.436
40	7.7	994	101		0.505
				4.179	
45	9.6	990	101	4.181	0.637
50	12.5	988	101	4.182	0.707
55	15.7	986	101	4.183	0.767
60	20.0	980	102	4.185	0.832
65	25.0	979	102	4.188	0.893
70	31.3	978	102	4.190	0.966
75	38.6	975	103	4.194	1.016
80	47.5	971	103	4.197	1.076
85	57.8	969	103	4.203	1.134
90	70.0	962	104	4.205	1.192
95	84.5	962	104	4.213	1.250
100	101.33	962	104	4.216	1.307
105	121	955	105	4.226	1.382
110	143	951	105	4.233	1.418
115	169	947	106	4.240	1.473
120	199	943	106	4.240	1.527
125	228	939	106	4.254	1.565
130	270	935	107	4.270	1.635
135	313	931	107	4.280	1.687
140	361	926	108	4.290	1.739
145	416	922	108	4.300	1.790
150	477	918	109	4.310	1.842
155	543	912	110	4.335	1.892
160	618	907	110	4.350	1.942
165	701	902	111	4.364	1.992
170	792	897	111	4.380	2.041
175	890	893	112	4.389	2.090
180	1000	887	113	4.420	2.138

185	1120	882	113	4.444	2.187
190	1260	876	114	4.460	2.236
195	1400	870	115	4.404	2.282
200	1550	863	116	4.497	2.329
220					
225	2550	834	120	4.648	2.569
240					
250	3990	800	125	4.867	2.797
260					
275	5950	756	132	5.202	3.022
300	8600	714	140	5.769	3.256
325	12130	654	153	6.861	3.501
350	16540	575	174	10.10	3.781
360	18680	526	190	14.60	3.921



## **Viscosity Converting Chart**

The viscosity of a fluid is its resistance to shear or flow, and is a measure of the fluid's adhesive/cohesive or frictional properties. This arises because of the internal molecular friction within the fluid producing the frictional drag effect. There are two related measures of fluid viscosity which are known as **dynamic** and **kinematic** viscosity.

**Dynamic viscosity** is also termed "absolute viscosity" and is the tangential force per unit area required to move one horizontal plane with respect to the other at unit velocity when maintained a unit distance apart by the fluid.

Centipoise (CPS) Millipascal (mPas)	Poise (P)	Centistokes (cSt)	Stokes (S)	Saybolt Seconds Universal (SSU)
1	0.01	1	0.01	31
2	0.02	2	0.02	34
4	0.04	4	0.04	38
7	0.07	7	0.07	47
10	0.1	10	0.1	60
15	0.15	15	0.15	80
20	0.2	20	0.2	100
25	0.24	25	0.24	130
30	0.3	30	0.3	160
40	0.4	40	0.4	210
50	0.5	50	0.5	260
60	0.6	60	0.6	320
70	0.7	70	0.7	370
80	0.8	80	8.0	430
90	0.9	90	0.9	480
100	1	100	1	530
120	1.2	120	1.2	580
140	1.4	140	1.4	690
160	1.6	160	1.6	790
180	1.8	180	1.8	900
200	2	200	2	1000
220	2.2	220	2.2	1100
240	2.4	240	2.4	1200
260	2.6	260	2.6	1280
280	2.8	280	2.8	1380
300	3	300	3	1475
320	3.2	320	3.2	1530

340	3.4	340	3.4	1630
360	3.6	360	3.6	1730
380	3.8	380	3.8	1850
400	4	400	4	1950
420	4.2	420	4.2	2050
440	4.4	440	4.4	2160
460	4.6	460	4.6	2270
480	4.8	480	4.8	2380
500	5	500	5	2480
550	5.5	550	5.5	2660
600	6	600	6	2900
700	7	700	7	3380
800	8	800	8	3880
900	9	900	9	4300
1000	10	1000	10	4600
1100	11	1100	11	5200
1200	12	1200	12	5620
1300	13	1300	13	6100
1400	14	1400	14	6480
1500	15	1500	15	7000
1600	16	1600	16	7500
1700	17	1700	17	8000
1800	18	1800	18	8500
1900	19	1900	19	9000
2000	20	2000	20	9400
2100	21	2100	21	9850
2200	22	2200	22	10300
2300	23	2300	23	10750
2400	24	2400	24	11200

### Various Flow Section Channels and their Geometric Relationships:

Area, wetted perimeter and hydraulic diameter for some common geometric sections like

- rectangular channels
- trapezoidal channels
- triangular channels
- circular channels.

#### **Rectangular Channel**

#### Flow Area

Flow area of a rectangular channel can be expressed as A = b h (1)

#### where

 $A = flow area (m^2, in^2)$ b = width of channel (m, in) h = height of flow (m, in)

#### Wetted Perimeter

Wetted perimeter of a rectangular channel can be expressed as P = b + 2 h (1b)

#### where

P = wetted perimeter (m, in)

#### Hydraulic Radius

Hydraulic radius of a rectangular channel can be expressed as  $R_h = b h / (b + 2 y) (1c)$ 

#### where

 $R_h$  = hydraulic radius (m, in)

#### **Trapezoidal Channel**

#### Flow Area

Flow area of a trapezoidal channel can be expressed as A = (a + z h) h (2)where

z = see figure above (m, in)

#### Wetted Perimeter

Wetted perimeter of a trapezoidal channel can be expressed as  $P = a + 2 h (1 + z^2)^{1/2} (2b)$ 

#### Hydraulic Radius

Hydraulic radius of a trapezoidal channel can be expressed as  $R_h = (a + z h) h / a + 2 h (1 + z^2)^{1/2} (2c)$ 

#### **Triangular Channel**

#### Flow Area

Flow area of a triangular channel can be expressed as

$$A = z h^2 (3)$$

where

z = see figure above (m, in)

#### Wetted Perimeter

Wetted perimeter of a triangular channel can be expressed as  $P = 2 h (1 + z^2)^{1/2} (3b)$ 

#### Hydraulic Radius

Hydraulic radius of a triangular channel can be expressed as  $R_h = z h / 2 (1 + z^2)^{1/2} (3c)$ 

#### **Circular Channel**

#### Flow Area

Flow area of a circular channel can be expressed as  $A = D^2/4$  ( $\alpha - \sin(2 \alpha)/2$ ) (4)

where

D = diameter of channel

 $\alpha = \cos^{-1}(1 - h/r)$ 

#### Wetted Perimeter

Wetted perimeter of a circular channel can be expressed as  $P = \alpha D (4b)$ 

#### Hydraulic Radius

Hydraulic radius of a circular channel can be expressed as  $R_h = D/8 [1 - \sin(2 \alpha) / (2 \alpha)] (4c)$ 

Velocity Head: Velocity head can be expressed as

$$h = v^2/2g(1)$$

where

v = velocity (ft, m)

g = acceleration of gravity (32.174 ft/s<sup>2</sup>, 9.81 m/s<sup>2</sup>)

Heads at different velocities can be taken from the table below:

Velocity	Velocity Head	
- <i>v</i> - (ft/sec)	- <i>v</i> ²/2g - (ft Water)	
0.5	0.004	
1.0	0.016	
1.5	0035	
2.0	0.062	
2.5	0.097	
3.0	0.140	
3.5	0.190	
4.0	0.248	
4.5	0.314	
5.0	0.389	
5.5	0.470	
6.0	0.560	
6.5	0.657	
7.0	0.762	
7.5	0.875	
8.0	0.995	
8.5	1.123	
9.0	1.259	
9.5	1.403	
10.0	1.555	
11.0	1.881	
12.0	2.239	
13.0	2.627	
14.0	3.047	
15.0	3.498	
16.0	3.980	
17.0	4.493	
18.0	5.037	
19.0	5.613	
20.0	6.219	
21.0	6.856	
22.0	7.525	

### **Some Commonly used Thermal Properties for Water**

- Density at 4 °C 1,000 kg/m³, 62.43 Lbs./Cu.Ft., 8.33 Lbs./Gal., 0.1337 Cu.Ft./Gal.
- Freezing temperature 0 °C
- Boiling temperature 100 °C
- Latent heat of melting 334 kJ/kg
- Latent heat of evaporation 2,270 kJ/kg
- Critical temperature 380 386 °C
- Critical pressure 23.520 kN/m<sup>2</sup>
- Specific heat capacity water 4.187 kJ/kgK
- Specific heat capacity ice 2.108 kJ/kgK
- Specific heat capacity water vapor 1.996 kJ/kgK
- Thermal expansion from 4 °C to 100 °C 4.2x10<sup>-2</sup>

Bulk modulus elasticity - 2,068,500 kN/m<sup>2</sup>

## **Reynolds Number**

Turbulent or laminar flow is determined by the dimensionless Reynolds Number.

The Reynolds number is important in analyzing any type of flow when there is substantial velocity gradient (i.e., shear.) It indicates the relative significance of the viscous effect compared to the inertia effect. The Reynolds number is proportional to inertial force divided by viscous force.

A definition of the Reynolds' Number:

The flow is

- **laminar** if Re < 2300
- transient if 2300 < Re < 4000
- turbulent if 4000 < Re

The table below shows Reynolds Number for one liter of water flowing through pipes of different dimensions:

	Pipe Size									
(inches)	1	1?	2	3	4	6	8	10	12	18
(mm)	25	40	50	75	100	150	200	250	300	450
Reynolds number with one (1) liter/min	835	550	420	280	210	140	105	85	70	46
Reynolds number with one (1) gal/min	3800	2500	1900	1270	950	630	475	380	320	210

#### **Linear Motion Formulas**

Velocity can be expressed as (velocity = constant):

$$v = s / t (1a)$$

where

v = velocity (m/s, ft/s)

s = linear displacement (m, ft)

t = time(s)

Velocity can be expressed as (acceleration = constant):

$$v = V_0 + a t (1b)$$

where

 $V_0$  = linear velocity at time zero (m/s, ft/s)

Linear displacement can be expressed as (acceleration = constant):

$$s = V_0 t + 1/2 a \dot{t}^2 (1c)$$

Combining 1a and 1c to express velocity

$$V = (V_0^2 + 2 a s)^{1/2} (1d)$$

Velocity can be expressed as (velocity variable)

$$v = ds / dt (1f)$$

where

ds = change of displacement (m, ft)

dt = change in time (s)

Acceleration can be expressed as

$$a = dv / dt (1g)$$

where

dv = change in velocity (m/s, ft/s)

# Water - Dynamic and Kinematic Viscosity Dynamic and Kinematic Viscosity of Water in Imperial Units (BG units):

Temperature - t - (°F)	Dynamic Viscosity - μ - 10 <sup>-5</sup> (lbs./ft²)	Kinematic Viscosity - v - 10 <sup>-5</sup> (ft²/s)
32	3.732	1.924
40	3.228	1.664
50	2.730	1.407
60	2.344	1.210
70	2.034	1.052
80	1.791	0.926
90	1.500	0.823
100	1.423	0.738
120	1.164	0.607
140	0.974	0.511
160	0.832	0.439
180	0.721	0.383
200	0.634	0.339
212	0.589	0.317

Dynamic and Kinematic Viscosity of Water in SI Units:

Temperature - t - (°C)	Dynamic Viscosity - μ - 10 <sup>-3</sup> (N.s/m²)	Kinematic Viscosity - v - 10 <sup>-6</sup> (m <sup>2</sup> /s)
0	1.787	1.787
5	1.519	1.519
10	1.307	1.307
20	1.002	1.004
30	0.798	0.801
40	0.653	0.658
50	0.547	0.553
60	0.467	0.475
70	0.404	0.413
80	0.355	0.365
90	0.315	0.326
100	0.282	0.294

## Water and Speed of Sound

Speed of sound in water at temperatures between 32 - 212°F (0-100°C) - imperial and SI units Speed of Sound in Water - in imperial units (BG units)

Temperature - <i>t</i> - (°F)	Speed of Sound - c - (ft/s)
32	4,603
40	4,672
50	4,748
60	4,814
70	4,871
80	4,919
90	4,960
100	4,995
120	5,049
140	5,091
160	5,101
180	5,095
200	5,089
212	5,062

Speed of Sound in Water - in SI units

TTATOL III OI allito	
Temperature	Speed of Sound
- t -	- C -
(°C)	(m/s)
0	1,403
5	1,427
10	1,447
20	1,481
30	1,507
40	1,526
50	1,541
60	1,552
70	1,555
80	1,555
90	1,550
100	1,543

#### References

"A High-Quality Digital X-Y Plotter Designed for Reliability, Flexibility and Low Cost". Hewlett-Packard Journal. http://www.hpl.hp.com/hpjournal/pdfs/lssuePDFs/1979-02.pdf. Retrieved 9 February 2012.

"A.O.Smith: The AC's and DC's of Electric Motors" (PDF).

http://www.aosmithmotors.com/uploadedFiles/AC-DC%20manual.pdf. Retrieved 2009-12-07.

"Cobham plc :: Aerospace and Security, Aerospace Communications, Annemasse".

Cobham.com. 2011-02-13. http://www.cobham.com/about-cobham/aerospace-and-

security/about-us/aerospace-communications/annemasse.aspx.

"Encyclopædia Britannica, "Galileo Ferraris"".

http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/204963/Galileo-Ferraris.

"Frequently Asked Slip Ring Questions". Moog.com. 2009-06-23.

http://www.moog.com/products/slip-rings/slip-rings-faq-s/. Retrieved 2011-09-02.

"Galileo Ferraris". http://profiles.incredible-people.com/galileo-ferraris/.

"how slip rings work". Uea-inc.com. http://www.uea-inc.com/products/slip-rings/how-they-work.aspx.

"Slip Ring Connector - SenRing Electronics". Senring.com. http://www.senring.com/hnr67.html. Alan Hendrickson, Colin Buckhurst Mechanical design for the stage Focal Press, 2008 ISBN 0-240-80631-X, page 379 with an illustration of pancake and drum-type slip rings.

B. R. Pelly, "Thyristor Phase-Controlled Converters and Cycloconverters: Operation, Control, and Performance" (New York: John Wiley, 1971).

Bakshi U.A. and Bakshi V.U. Basics of Electrical Engineering. Technical Publications Pune. 2008.

Bakshi U.A., Godse and Bakshi M.V. Electrical Machines and Electronics. Technical Publications Pune, 2009.

Bedford, B. D.; Hoft, R. G. et al. (1964). Principles of Inverter Circuits. New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc.. ISBN 0-471-06134-4. (Inverter circuits are used for variable-frequency motor speed control)

Bishop, Robert H., Ed. The Mechatronics Handbook, ISA—The Instrumentation, Systems and Automation Society, CRC Press, 2002.

Briere D. and Traverse, P. (1993) "Airbus A320/A330/A340 Electrical Flight Controls: A Family of Fault-Tolerant Systems" Proc. FTCS, pp. 616–623.

Brumbach Michael E. Industrial Electricity. Thomason Delmar Learning, 2005.

Cyril W. Lander, Power Electronics 3rd Edition, McGraw Hill International UK Limited, London 1993 ISBN 0-07-707714-8 Chapter 9–8 Slip Ring Induction Motor Control

Deshpande, M.V. Electric Motors: Application and Control. PHI Learning Private Ltd., 2010.

Deshpande, M.V. Electric Motors: Application and Control. PHI Learning Private Ltd., 2010.

Donald G. Fink and H. Wayne Beaty, Standard Handbook for Electrical Engineers, Eleventh Edition, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1978, ISBN 0-07-020974-X.

Edwin J. Houston and Arthur Kennelly, Recent Types of Dynamo-Electric Machinery, copyright American Technical Book Company 1897, published by P.F. Collier and Sons New York, 1902 Electric motors use 60% of china's electric energy, for example

Electricity and magnetism, translated from the French of Amédée Guillemin. Rev. and ed. by Silvanus P. Thompson. London, MacMillan, 1891

Faraday, Michael (1844). Experimental Researches in Electricity. 2. See plate 4.

Fitzgerald/Kingsley/Kusko (Fitzgerald/Kingsley/Umans in later years), Electric Machinery, classic text for junior and senior electrical engineering students. Originally published in 1952, 6th edition published in 2002.

Ganot's Physics, 14th Edition, N.Y., 1893 translated by Atkinson, pp. 907 and 908. (Section 899, and Figure 888).

Garrison, Ervan G., "A history of engineering and technology". CRC Press, 1998. ISBN 0-8493-9810-X, 9780849398100. Retrieved May 7, 2009.

Gee, William (2004). "Sturgeon, William (1783–1850)". Oxford Dictionary of National Biography. Oxford, England: Oxford University Press. doi:10.1093/ref:odnb/26748.

Gill, Paul. Electrical Power Equipment Maintenance and Testing. CRC Press: Taylor & Francis Group, 2009.

Herman, Stephen L. Electric Motor Control. 9th ed. Delmar Cengage Learning, 2010.

Herman, Stephen L. Industrial Motor Control. 6th ed. Delmar Cengage Learning, 2010.

http://books.google.it/books?id=CxQdC6xPFSwC&pg=PA45&lpg=PA45&dq=GALILEO+FERRA

RIS+AC+MOTOR+INVENTION&source=web&ots=jjeS-hcv2T&sig=cYbNfNNeVwvMlhR-

JCP8uReedRU&hl=it&sa=X&oi=book result&resnum=1&ct=result#v=onepage&g&f=false.

http://www.circuitcellar.com/ Motor Comparison, Circuit Cellar Magazine, July 2008, Issue 216, Bachiochi, p.78 (Table edited in Wikipedia, May 2011)

http://www.daytronic.com/products/trans/t-magpickup.htm

http://www.electronicsweekly.com/Articles/2010/08/13/46377/dyson-vacuums-104000rpm-

brushless-dc-technology.htm

http://www.frankfurt.matav.hu/angol/magytud.htm

http://www.mpoweruk.com/history.htm

http://www.mpoweruk.com/timeline.htm

http://www.physics.umd.edu/lecdem/services/demos/demosk4/k4-21.gif

http://www.traveltohungary.com/english/articles/article.php?id=135

Hughes, Austin. Electric Motors and Drives: fundamentals, types and applications. 3rd ed. Linacre House, 2006.

Irwin, David J., Ed. The Industrial Electronics Handbook. CRC Press: IEEE Press, 1997.

Jiles, David. Introduction to Magnetism and Magnetic Materials. CRC Press: Taylor Francis Group, 1998.

John N. Chiasson, Modeling and High Performance Control of Electric Machines, Wiley-IEEE Press, New York, 2005, ISBN 0-471-68449-X.

Kuphaldt, Tony R. (2000–2006). "Chapter 13 AC MOTORS". Lessons In Electric Circuits—

Volume II. http://www.ibiblio.org/obp/electricCircuits/AC/AC\_13.html. Retrieved 2006-04-11.

Laughton M.A. and Warne, D.F., Eds. Electrical Engineer's Reference Book. 16th ed. Elsevier Science, 2003.

linear Electric Machines- A Personal View - Eric R. Laithwaite, Proceedings of the IEEE, Vol. 63, No. 2, February 1975 page 250

Miller, Rex and Mark R. Miller, Industrial Electricity and Motor Controls. McGraw Hill, 2008.

Nature 53. (printed in 1896) page: 516

Neidhöfer, Gerhard. [http://www.ieee.org/organizations/pes/public/2007/sep/peshistory.html "Early Three-Phase Power Winner in the development of polyphase ac"].

http://www.ieee.org/organizations/pes/public/2007/sep/peshistory.html.

North, David. (2000) "Finding Common Ground in Envelope Protection Systems". Aviation Week & Space Technology, Aug 28, pp. 66–68.

Pansini, Anthony, J (1989). Basic of Electric Motors. Pennwell Publishing Company. p. 45. ISBN 0-13-060070-9.

Patrick, Dale R. and Fardo, Stephen W. Electrical Distribution Systems. 2nd ed. The Fairmont Press, 2009.

Patrick, Dale R. and Stephen W. Fardo. Rotating Electrical Machines and Power Systems. 2nd ed. The Fairmont Press, 1997.

Patrick, Dale R; Fardo, Stephen W., Rotating Electrical Machines and Power Systems (2nd Edition)1997 Fairmont Press, Inc. ISBN 978-0-88173-239-9 chapter 11

Peter W. Fortescue, John Stark, Graham Swinerd Spacecraft systems engineering John Wiley and Sons, 2003 ISBN 0-470-85102-3

Rajput R.K. Basic Electrical and Electronics Engineering. Laxmi Publications Ltd., 2007.

Resemblat & Frienman DC and AC machinery

Schoenherr, Steven F. (2001), "Loudspeaker History". Recording Technology History. Retrieved 2010-03-13.

Shanefield D. J., Industrial Electronics for Engineers, Chemists, and Technicians, William Andrew Publishing, Norwich, NY, 2001.

Singh, Yaduvir Dr. and Verma M. Fundamentals of Electrical Engineering. University Science Press, 2010.

Sivanagaraju S., Reddy and Prasad. Power Semiconductor Drives. PHI Learning Private Ltd., 2009.

Slow Speed Torque Drive Units

Subrahmanyam, V., Electric Drives: Concepts and Applications. 2nd ed. Tata McGraw Hill, 2011.

The "Goodness" of Small Contemporary Permanent Magnet Electric Machines - D J Patterson, C W Brice, R A Dougal, D Kovuri

Tokai University Unveils 100W DC Motor with 96% Efficiency

http://techon.nikkeibp.co.jp/english/NEWS EN/20090403/168295/

Toliyat, Hamid A. and Kliman G.B. Handbook of Electric Motors. Marcel Dekker, Inc., 2004.

US Department of Energy indicates over half US electricity generation is used by electric motors Wayne Saslow. Electricity, Magnetism and Light. Thomson Learning Inc., 2002.

# Math Conversion Factors and Practical Exercise If you are poor at math, come to a TLC review class.

1 PSI = 2.31 Feet of Water 1 Foot of Water = .433 PSI

1.13 Feet of Water = 1 Inch of Mercury

454 Grams = 1 Pound

2.54 CM =Inch

1 Gallon of Water = 8.34 Pounds

1 mg/L = 1 PPM

17.1 mg/L = 1 Grain/Gallon

1% = 10,000 mg/L

694 Gallons per Minute = MGD

1.55 Cubic Feet per Second = 1 MGD

60 Seconds = 1 Minute 1440 Minutes = 1 Day

.746 kW = 1 Horsepower

.746 kW = 1 Horsepower

LENGTH

12 Inches = 1 Foot 3 Feet = 1 Yard

5,280 Feet = 1 Mile

**AREA** 

144 Square Inches = 1 Square Foot

43,560 Square Feet = 1 Acre

**VOLUME** 

1000 Milliliters = 1 Liter

3.785 Liters = 1 Gallon

231 Cubic Inches = 1 Gallon

7.48 Gallons = 1 Cubic Foot of Water

62.38 Pounds = 1 Cubic Foot of Water

#### **Dimensions**

**SQUARE:** Area (sq. ft) = Length X Width

Volume (cu.ft.) = Length (ft) X Width (ft) X Height (ft)

CIRCLE: Area (sq.ft.) = 3.14 X Radius (ft) X Radius (ft)

CYLINDER: Volume (Cu. ft) = 3.14 X Radius (ft) X Radius (ft) X Depth (ft)

PIPE VOLUME: .785 X Diameter <sup>2</sup> X Length = ? To obtain gallons multiply by 7.48

**SPHERE:** (3.14) (Diameter)<sup>3</sup> Circumference = 3.14 X Diameter

(6)

#### **General Conversions**

Multiply	<b>-&gt;</b>	to get
to get	<b>&lt;</b> —	Divide
cc/min	1	mL/min
cfm (ft <sup>3</sup> /min)	28.31	L/min
cfm (ft <sup>3</sup> /min)	1.699	m³/hr
cfh (ft <sup>3</sup> /hr)	472	mL/min
cfh (ft <sup>3</sup> /hr)	0.125	GPM
GPH	63.1	mL/min
GPH	0.134	cfh
GPM	0.227	m³/hr
GPM	3.785	L/min
oz/min	29.57	mL/min

**POUNDS PER DAY=** Flow (MG) X Concentration (mg/L) X 8.34 **AKA Solids Applied Formula =** Flow X Dose X 8.34

**PERCENT EFFICIENCY** =  $\frac{\ln - Out}{\ln}$  X 100

**TEMPERATURE**:  ${}^{0}F = ({}^{0}C \times 9/5) + 32$  9/5 = 1.8  ${}^{0}C = ({}^{0}F - 32) \times 5/9$  5/9 = .555

**CONCENTRATION:** Conc. (A) X Volume (A) = Conc. (B) X Volume (B)

**FLOW RATE** (Q): Q = A X V (**Q**uantity = **A**rea X **V**elocity)

**FLOW RATE** (gpm): Flow Rate (gpm) =  $\underline{2.83 \text{ (Diameter, in)}^2 \text{ (Distance, in)}}$ Height, in

% **SLOPE** =  $\frac{\text{Rise (feet)}}{\text{Run (feet)}}$  X 100

ACTUAL LEAKAGE = Leak Rate (GPD)
Length (mi.) X Diameter (in)

**VELOCITY** = <u>Distance (ft)</u> Time (Sec)

**N** = Manning's Coefficient of Roughness

**R** = Hydraulic Radius (ft.) **S** = Slope of Sewer (ft/ft.)

**HYDRAULIC RADIUS** (ft) = <u>Cross Sectional Area of Flow (ft)</u>
Wetted pipe Perimeter (ft)

**WATER HORSEPOWER** = Flow (gpm) X Head (ft) 3960

**BRAKE HORSEPOWER** =  $\frac{\text{Flow (gpm)}}{3960} \times \frac{\text{Head (ft)}}{\text{Pump Efficiency}}$ 

**MOTOR HORSEPOWER** =  $\underline{\text{Flow (gpm)}}$  X  $\underline{\text{Head (ft)}}$  3960 X  $\underline{\text{Pump Eff.}}$  X  $\underline{\text{Motor Eff.}}$ 

MEAN OR AVERAGE = Sum of the Values

Number of Values

**TOTAL HEAD** (ft) = Suction Lift (ft) X Discharge Head (ft)

SURFACE LOADING RATE = Flow Rate (gpm) (gal/min/sq.ft.) Surface Area (sq. ft)

MIXTURE = (Volume 1, gal) (Strength 1, %) + (Volume 2, gal) (Strength 2,%)

STRENGTH (%) (Volume 1, gal) + (Volume 2, gal)

**DETENTION TIME (hrs.)** = Volume of Basin (gals) X 24 hrs. Flow (GPD)

**SLOPE** = Rise (ft) SLOPE (%) = Rise (ft)  $\times 100$ 

198

Run (ft) Run (ft)

#### **POPULATION EQUIVALENT (PE):**

1 PE = .17 Pounds of BOD per Day

1 PE = .20 Pounds of Solids per Day

1 PE = 100 Gallons per Day

#### **LEAKAGE (GPD/inch)** = Leakage of Water per Day (GPD)

Sewer Diameter (inch)

**CHLORINE DEMAND** (mg/L) = Chlorine Dose (mg/L) – Chlorine Residual (mg/L)

 $\tau Q$  = Allowable time for decrease in pressure from 3.5 PSU to 2.5 PSI

 $\tau q = As below$ 

$$\tau Q = (0.022) (d_1^2 L_1)/Q \quad \tau q = [0.085] [(d_1^2 L_1)/(d_1 L_1)]$$

Q = 2.0 cfm air loss

 $\theta$  = .0030 cfm air loss per square foot of internal pipe surface

 $\delta$  = Pipe diameter (inches)

L = Pipe Length (feet)

$$V = 1.486 R^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$

ν

V = Velocity (ft./sec.)

v = Pipe Roughness

R = Hydraulic Radius (ft)

S= Slope (ft/ft)

#### HYDRAULIC RADIUS (ft) = Flow Area (ft. 2)

Wetted Perimeter (ft.)

**WIDTH OF TRENCH** (ft) = Base (ft) + (2 Sides) X <u>Depth (ft 2)</u> Slope



We welcome you to complete the assignment in Microsoft Word. You can easily find the assignment at www.abctlc.com. Once complete, just simply fax or e-mail the answer key along with the registration page to us and allow two weeks for grading. Once we grade it, we will mail a certificate of completion to you. Call us if you need any help. If you need your certificate back within 48 hours, you may be asked to pay a rush service fee of \$50.00.

You can download the assignment in Microsoft Word from TLC's website under the Assignment Page. <a href="www.abctlc.com">www.abctlc.com</a> You will have 90 days in order to successfully complete this assignment with a score of 70% or better. If you need any assistance, please contact TLC's Student Services. Once you are finished, please mail, e-mail or fax your answer sheet along with your registration form.